



Hujambo!

**A Standards-Based Approach to
Introductory Kiswahili**

Volume 2

**Brenda Aromu Wawire
John Munyui Muchira
Peter Otiato Ojiambo**



Hujambo!

A Standards-Based Approach to Introductory Kiswahili

Volume 2

Brenda Aromu Wawire,

John Munyui Muchira and Peter Otiato Ojiambo

Illustrations by Maurice Wegulo



These materials were developed under grant P229A180008 from the U.S. Department of Education. However, those contents do not necessarily represent the policy of the U.S. Department of Education, and you should not assume endorsement by the Federal Government.

Hujambo! A Standards-Based Approach to Introductory Kiswahili, Volume 2
Last Revised: June 18, 2025.



Except as otherwise noted, this work is licensed under a
Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License.

You are free to copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format and to remix, remix transform and build upon the material under the following terms:

- **Attribution** — You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.
- **NonCommercial** — You may not use the material for commercial purposes.
- **No additional restrictions** — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

To view a full copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/legalcode>.

ISBN 9781611950649

Cover pattern

“Luxury mandala vector” by visnezh is distributed under a Free License.
<https://www.freepik.com/vectors/luxury-mandala>. Last accessed 8/12/2022.

Table of Contents

About the Authors.....	i
Acknowledgements	iii
About the Curriculum	v
5. Somo la tano.....	1
5.1 Vyakula	3
5.2. Kwenda mkahawani	27
5.3 Kununua vyakula sokoni	45
5.4 Kuandaa vyakula	63
Sources	78
6. Somo la sita.....	83
6.1 Afya na magonjwa	85
6.2 Mavazi na maumbile	110
6.3 Leo hali ya hewa iko vipi?.....	134
6.4 Sherehe na likizo	151
Sources	168
7. Somo la saba.....	171
7.1 Usafiri.....	173
7.2 Starehe na burudani	192
7.3 Safari katika vivutio vya utalii	214
Epilogue	236
Sources	241

About the Authors

Brenda Aromu Wawire is a Research Faculty in the Learning Systems Institute at Florida State University, USA. Her research interests include literacy acquisition across languages, second language acquisition, foreign and second language pedagogy, language of instruction policy, curriculum design, teacher training and best practices for teaching multilingual learners. She holds a Ph.D. in Curriculum and Instruction with an emphasis on Foreign and Second Language Education from Florida State University, an M.A. in Modern Languages with a specialization in Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages from the University of Mississippi, and a Bachelor of Education Arts (English and Literature) from Kenyatta University. She served as Fulbright Foreign Language Teaching Assistant at Jackson State University. Prior to joining Florida State University, Dr. Wawire was an Associate Research Scientist at the African Population and Health Research Center in Nairobi, Kenya. She has previously served as an Assistant Teaching Professor and the Coordinator of African and African Diasporic Languages at the University of Kansas. She has experience as a trainer of trainers for the National African Language Resource Center. She has held Kiswahili language and culture teaching positions at Jackson State University, University of Mississippi, University of Florida, University of Kansas and Florida State University. She has won various grants including STARTALK, Human Development Innovation Fund, and the Jacobs Foundation Research Fellowship, among others. Her recent publications include “Effective Intensive Language Programs: The case Study of a Kiswahili STARTALK Program Model” (*Journal of National Council of Less Commonly Taught Languages*, 2023) and “The Structural Relations of Component Reading Comprehension Skills in Kiswahili: The Influence of Socio-Economic Status and Home Literacy Environment” (*Reading Research Quarterly*, 2025). She is passionate about generating high-quality research evidence that will have policy implications on language and literacy development globally.

John Munyui Muchira is a Visiting Assistant Professor and Program in African Languages Coordinator at the Center for African Studies at the University of Florida, USA. Dr. Muchira earned his doctoral degree in Educational Leadership and Policy Studies with a specialization in Sociocultural and International Development Education Studies from Florida State University and a graduate certificate in Program Evaluation from the same institution. He also holds a Master of Arts in Modern Languages from the University of Mississippi, and a Bachelor of Education (Arts) with specialization in Kiswahili and English Language from the University of Nairobi. Dr. Muchira taught Kiswahili as a second language in Kenya before beginning his academic career teaching Kiswahili as a Fulbright Foreign Language Teaching Assistant at New York University. Prior to joining the University of Florida, he taught Kiswahili language and culture at the University of Kansas, the University of Mississippi, and University of Miami and was an instructor for a summer “crash” course on Ecotourism and Environmental Politics in Tanzania at the University of Maine-Farmington. He has served as an instructor and curriculum designer in various programs in the U.S., namely the STARTALK Swahili Academy program at the University of Kansas and the African Flagship Languages Initiative at the University of Florida. Dr. Muchira’s research interests are in language pedagogy, curriculum reforms, study abroad programs, policy planning and development, holistic youth development, and the transition from education to the world of work. As an interdisciplinary scholar, his experience spans several government and international development projects where he has served as consultant and research scientist. He was the Co-Principal investigator and Project Manager in the Role of Education in Addressing Inequalities (REAI) project. Some of his recent publications include “Implementing Competency Based Curriculum (CBC) in Kenya: Challenges and Lessons from South Korea and USA” (*Journal of Education and Learning*, 2023) and “Digital Media and Creative Economy Potential on Youth Employment in Kenya: A Grounded Theory

Perspective” (*Information and Learning Sciences*, 2023). He is a recipient of several scholarships and awards, including the Fulbright scholarship, Matasa Fellowship through the Mastercard Foundation and the Institute of Development Studies at the University of Sussex, and the Gagné Research Prize for the Best Graduate Research Paper in the College of Education at Florida State University.

Peter Otiato Ojiambo is Associate Professor, Department of African and African American Studies, University of Kansas, USA, with several years of teaching, research, and student supervision experience. He is currently the Director of Graduate Studies in the Department of African and African American Studies at the University of Kansas and the Associate Director for Kansas University, African Studies Center. He has previously served as the African Languages Coordinator for the Department of African and African American Studies. Dr. Ojiambo is a trained Africanist, and he has been involved in the field of African Studies (especially African education and African languages i.e., Kiswahili) for more than two decades. Additionally, he has wide experience in the training, teaching, material development and assessment of the Less Commonly Taught languages. He holds a Bachelor of Education degree specializing in Kiswahili and Religious Studies, a Master of Philosophy degree majoring in Sociology of Education from Moi University, Kenya; Master of Arts degree majoring in Kiswahili from the University of Dar salaam, Tanzania; Master of Arts degree in International Affairs focusing on African Studies; and a Ph.D. in Educational Studies from Ohio University. Prior to joining the University of Kansas, he taught at Ohio University and the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. His fields of teaching, research, and publication include African languages (Kiswahili pedagogy and curriculum); African-centered educational biographies; comparative and international education; educational leadership; democracy, poverty, and development; non-Western educational thought; educational administration, curriculum, teaching, learning and relational theories; school and society relations. He holds a Scholarly Achievement Award (2021) and the Center for Teaching Excellence Award (2014) from the University of Kansas. He has won various grants that include Title VI NRC and FLAS (for African Studies Centers), STARTALK, among others. His recent publications include *Kenyan Youth Education in Colonial and Post-colonial Times: Joseph Kamiru Gikubu's Impact* (Palgrave, 2017); *Erasing Invisibility, Inequity and Social Injustice of Africans in the Diaspora and the Continent* (Cambridge Scholars, 2017) and “Beyond the Methods Course: Using Exploratory Practice for Graduate Student Teacher Development” (*Journal of American Association of University Language Supervisors and Coordinators*, 2012).

Acknowledgements

Any scholarly publication is a work of many labors and not the result of one individual. If there is good to be found in this book, it is principally due to the many people who graciously offered their various intellectual gifts, time, and a myriad of support to this project. We would like to acknowledge the support of several individuals who made the completion of this book possible. First, and foremost, we owe a great debt of gratitude to Dr. Jonathan Perkins, the long-serving Director of the University of Kansas Open Language Resource Center, for his interest and for affirming this book's merit and importance. Dr. Perkins got us fascinated with the idea of Open Educational Resources (OER) and their vital role in foreign language teaching and learning. He challenged us to undertake the book project and underscored its significance in the field of the Less Commonly Taught Languages (especially African languages). Dr. Perkins devoted many hours to manuscript discussion meetings, read and edited several drafts of the manuscript with professionalism, skill, rigor, and diligence and made insightful suggestions for improving the book. Additionally, he invited us to share some of the early pieces of the book at the Language OER Conference in 2021 and 2022. Without Dr. Perkins and the generous funding, he provided through the Language Resource Center grant of 2018-2022, this work would not have been completed in time nor gained its current depth, scope, and shape. His unlimited patience, unwavering support, guidance, vital advice, attentiveness, and belief in this project was a great comfort to us throughout the arduous writing process. Dr. Perkins and his brilliant and talented staff were phenomenally generous with their time and resources of the mind, and we have learned a great deal from them in the process of writing this book. Their energy, devotion, constant enthusiasm, and engagement to see this work to its successful end has made this book what it is. We are far more grateful to them than the spoken word can say.

We would also like to express our gratitude to our various institutions for their enormous support that enabled us to undertake this work. Without their varied support and interest, it would have been difficult to complete this work in good time. We would not have asked for better stimulating and imaginative intellectual homes than our institutions. We have been extremely well supported in this by our colleagues at our various institutions. In particular, the two chairs of African and African American Studies Department at the University of Kansas, Drs. Cécile Accilien and Shawn Alexander and Dr. Glenn Adams, the current Director of Kansas African Studies Center, each one of them offered stimulating ideas, encouraged us, and supported our work on this project. We are tremendously grateful to each of them for their support. Additionally, we are indebted to wonderful Africanist colleagues at our various institutions who are rather too many to list here for all their support.

We are also grateful to David Irungu and Purity Wawire, our friends, and colleagues, for their diligent, generous, and tireless reading of the manuscript at a critical stage of the writing process and for providing us with vital feedback, suggestions and input on how to strengthen the quality of the book. Their sharp intellect, language expertise and experience played a significant role in shaping and enhancing the final product of the book. Our other appreciation goes to Dr. Rose Lugano, Francis Semwaza, Anthony Gathiru and Rosemary Maro for all their help in recording the audio files that supplement the book.

Further, we are indebted to Maurice Wegulo for providing us the numerous illustrations that accompany the lessons in the book. His indefatigable commitment, imagination and creativity to work on the illustrations amidst his other demanding projects was vital in enriching the content of the book.

We also acknowledge the input given by our many present and former undergraduate and graduate students in our Elementary Kiswahili courses who have read various versions of this book in our courses where we have used several drafts of it. Their response to the earlier versions of the book, their thoughtful comments and reviews helped us to make it an appealing read. Our affectionate gratitude goes especially to Macie Rouse, Owen Wegner, Kirsten Wang, Tyler Cargill, and Athaviah Barker.

Finally, we are grateful to all our respective families for all their myriad support throughout our work on this book. Saying thank you to family is seldom, if ever, enough even though it means so much. We feel woefully inadequate to say thank you! But we hope the simplicity of this expression will suffice for our families to express our deep and immense appreciation for their ceaseless joy, love, hospitality, understanding, enthusiasm, lifetime constant encouragement, friendship and support on our intellectual journey. We are eternally grateful. The writing is done, so let us commence its reading and use in the teaching and learning of Kiswahili language and culture!

About the Curriculum

Hujambo! is an evidence-based curriculum for introductory Kiswahili language and culture courses. This open access curriculum seeks to fill the gap in literature on open resource materials for teaching Less Commonly Taught Languages that reflects current research on second and foreign language teaching. It is designed for introductory Kiswahili language and culture courses at the college level, K-12, foreign service, second language educators, or anyone who has interest in East Africa. It has approximately 150 contact hours of instruction. It is organized thematically and designed utilizing the backward curriculum design. Each chapter carefully integrates the 5Cs (Communication, Cultures, Connections, Comparisons, and Communities) of the World- Readiness Standards for Learning Languages – the roadmap to language competence. The content is based on authentic materials and provides students multiple opportunities to practice activities that target standards.

In the curriculum, students follow two American students studying abroad in Tanzania from their arrival at the airport until they depart home, providing an opportunity to learn about their host families, academic pursuits, and free time with friends, among others. Conversations with members of the local community, as well as emails and texts they send to one another, provide meaningful insights about their encounters with a new culture and how it (re)shapes their view of the larger world. This grammatical and lexical content is embedded within the storyline of a cultural exploration of East Africa.

The curriculum is divided into 7 units, each centered around a specific theme. The book is divided into two volumes. Volume 1 has four units with Unit 1 covering greetings and introductions and getting to know new people. Unit 2 delves into the family and relations of the host family and the students participating in the study abroad program. Unit 3 explores daily activities and hobbies the students engage in during study abroad and in their home contexts. Unit 4 deals with the surroundings where they live. Volume 2 has three units with Unit 5 covering topics of food, nutrition, and recipes. Unit 6 focuses on health and living conditions. Unit 7 forms the climax of the study abroad adventure where the themes of travel and leisure are discussed. The book ends with an epilogue where the American Students bid their host families goodbye and depart to return home.

Each unit is subdivided into 4-5 sections that build up vocabulary, grammar, and cultural knowledge around the theme. Each unit opens with highlights on essential questions that guide student inquiry and exploration of the thematic area. This is followed by the targeted learning outcomes for the three modes of communication; interpersonal, interpretive, and presentational that students will perform to demonstrate their mastery of the new content. The learning activities at stage 3 are comprised of dialogues, monologues and audio recordings that model the language, cultural content, and targeted grammatical constructions and carefully scaffolded activities that encourage interaction with classmates. Each section concludes with a summative task that is either a written or an oral presentation. Each section has a list of key vocabulary words. By completing this curriculum students are expected to build a core vocabulary of approximately 1,000 words, including the most common words for everyday interactions and the individual vocabulary they need to speak about their own academic lives.

The authors are confident that this evidence-based curriculum will provide a strong foundation and enhance proficiency and intercultural competence in Kiswahili and East African Cultures.

Each activity is marked regarding format – speaking, listening, writing, reading – using a specialized icon.

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students understand, interpret, and analyze what is heard, read, or viewed on a variety of topics.	Students interact and negotiate meaning in spoken or written conversations to share information, reactions, feelings, and opinions.	Students present information, concepts, and ideas to inform, explain, persuade, and narrate on a variety of topics using appropriate media and adapting to various audiences of listeners, readers, or viewers.
		

5. Somo la tano

Vyakula, lishe na mapishi

Essential Questions:

1. How do cultural practices around food in your culture differ from those of other cultures that you might know?
2. How are meals used in East Africa to show hospitality to guests and to build family bonds?
3. What kinds of questions and practices during mealtimes are considered inappropriate in your culture?
4. What are common practices surrounding meals and dishes in families in your culture? How different are they from other cultures?

Stage One:

By the end of this unit, students should be able to:

- present information on how to prepare an East African dish or a dish from their own culture with related images (Presentational speaking or writing);
- exchange information about the food and drinks that they like and dislike (Interpersonal speaking);
- identify common East African cuisines from an oral or written text (Interpretive reading or listening);
- ask and respond to questions about dietary restrictions (Interpersonal speaking);
- order food at a restaurant and over the phone (Interpersonal speaking);
- ask and respond to questions about food items from a restaurant menu (Interpersonal speaking);
- interact with others in everyday situations such as bargaining for food at the market (Interpersonal speaking);
- compare and contrast the cultural significance of food in East Africa and their own culture (Cultural comparisons);
- identify the steps of preparing a common East African food from a written or oral text (Interpretive reading or listening);
- explain the role of mealtime as a central aspect for building family relationships and connections (Presentational speaking or writing);
- explain the notion of “hospitality” among Kiswahili speakers and compare hospitality practices with other cultures of the world (Cultural comparisons);
- present various perspectives that govern the notion of hospitality and how the lack of this understanding can affect relationships among people (Presentational speaking or writing).

Stage Two:

What will be acceptable evidence of the student's knowledge and ability?

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students will read a recipe of an East African dish and identify the meal being prepared from its ingredients and preparation steps. Students will then tell other students the steps to prepare the dish. Students will watch videos on street foods in East Africa and write a summary of the foods that are available and their importance in understanding the culture.	Students will exchange information about their food and drink preferences and dietary restrictions they may have. Students will roleplay a visit to a local restaurant during which they will place an order and pay the bill. Students will role-play visiting a local market in Kenya or Tanzania during which they will interact with a seller. They will ask the cost of the items, state the quantity or the number of items they would like to purchase, and negotiate the price of items with the seller.	Students will create a digital poster that includes a photo collage and give a presentation to compare and contrast East African dishes versus their own culture. The presentation will include information about common foods, ingredients, how the foods are prepared, cultural significance of the dishes, and cultural practices around meals in the targeted cultures. Students will also highlight similarities and differences in meal practices in the two cultures. Students will simulate an orientation for a study abroad group and will share information about an assigned topic (market culture, preparation of dishes, eating norms, buying and selling practices). In addition, they will also lead a discussion session on intercultural comparisons of foods between their own culture and East African culture.

Stage Three:

What activities will students participate in to prepare them to demonstrate what they know and can do?

5.1 Vyakula



Zoezi A

Shamila and her host mother, Farida, discuss what they like to eat for breakfast. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Shikamoo mama?

Farida: Marahaba Shamila. Habari za asubuhi?

Shamila: Salama sana mama. Je, mlilala vizuri?

Farida: Bila shaka. Tulikuwa na usiku mwanana. Sasa ninaandaa kiamshakinywa. Je, wewe ungependa kunywa nini asubuhi?

Shamila: Asubuhi mimi ninapenda kunywa kahawa chungu. Mimi hunywa kahawa chungu bila maziwa. Na wewe je?

Farida: Mimi ninapenda kunywa chai kila asubuhi. Mimi hupenda chai ambayo ina maziwa na sukari. Je, wewe hupenda kula nini asubuhi?

Shamila: Mimi hupenda kula mkate, mayai, soseji na matunda mbalimbali. Na nyinyi je?

Farida: Kwa kawaida sisi hula mkate, mandazi, viazi vitamu, uwanga, ndizi na njugu pamoja na chai kwa kiamshakinywa.

Shamila: Mnakula vyakula vya kupendeza sana. Ninajua nitafurahia vyakula hivyo.

Farida: Asante kwa maelezo yako.

1. Shamila anapenda kunywa vinjwaji gani asubuhi?
2. Farida anapenda aina gani ya chai kwa kiamshakinywa?
3. Shamila hula vyakula gani kwa kiamshakinywa?
4. Familia ya Farida hula vyakula gani asubuhi?
5. Je, unapenda chakula cha asubuhi cha Shamila au cha Bibi Farida? Eleza kwa nini?
6. Wewe unapenda kula nini asubuhi?



Zoezi B

Joseph receives a call from an East African colleague who inquires about how he is doing. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.

1. Joseph anapenda vyakula gani?
2. Joseph anapenda vinywaji gani?
3. Kwa nini Joseph hapendi maziwa?
4. Je, familia pokezi ya Joseph hunywa kahawa?
5. Joseph anasema kuwa maisha katika jiji la Dar es Salaam yako vipi?



Zoezi C

Shamila is planning to stay with Farida's sister Anita for two weeks while collecting data for a class project. Anita has written Farida an email to inquire about Shamila's food preferences. Read Farida's response and answer the questions that follow.



Hujambo Anita,

Ninatumai wewe pamoja na familia yako mko salama. Sisi hatujambo. Tunaendelea na shughuli za kila siku vizuri. Asante kwa kujitolea kukaa na Shamila kwa muda ambao atakuwa akifanya utafiti wake katika mji wa Namanga. Ulisema kuwa ungependa kujua vyakula ambavyo Shamila anapenda kula? Yeye hula vyakula ambavyo sisi hula nyumbani. Kwa kiamshakinywa, yeye anapenda kula mkate wa siagi, mayai, soseji na mandazi. Hapendi kula vyakula vya kuchemshwa kama vile viazi vitamu au uwanga. Hapendi vyakula vya kuchemshwa kwa sababu havina ladha. Yeye hunywa kahawa chungu bila maziwa na sukari kila asubuhi. Huwa hanywi chai kamwe. Kwa chakula cha mchana au jioni yeye hula vyakula vya kawaida kama vile mchuzi wa ng'ombe, kuku, samaki au nyama ya mbuzi pamoja na wali, chapati au ugali. Yeye hapendi kula ugali sana kwa sababu hauna ladha tamu. Yeye anapenda sana mboga na matunda kwa hivyo yeye hula aina yoyote ya mboga au matunda. Kwa kweli, usisumbuke hata kidogo kwa maandalizi ya ziada kwa sababu Shamila anapenda kula vyakula vyovyote vya Afrika Mshariki. Iwapo una maswali yoyote kuhusu vyakula tafadhali mwulize Shamila au mimi.

Wako dada,

Farida

1. Shamila anapenda kula nini kwa kiamshakinywa?
2. Shamila huwa hanywi kinywaji gani?
3. Kwa nini Shamila hapendi vyakula vya kuchemshwa kama vile viazi vitamu au uwanga?
4. Shamila anapenda vyakula gani kwa chakula cha mchana au jioni?
5. Je, Shamila anapenda matunda na mboga?
6. Wewe hupendi kula vyakula gani?

Use the vocabulary and questions provided below to ask a classmate about what they like to drink. Be prepared to report back to the class on what you find out.



chai



maziwa



maji



kahawa



bia



mvinyo



soda



maji ya matunda

1. Wewe unapenda kunywa vinywaji gani?
2. Wewe hunywa vinywaji gani asubuhi, mchana na jioni?
3. Wewe hupendi kunywa vinywaji gani?

If you had the opportunity to have any of the following foods for breakfast, what would you choose and why?



mandazi



mkate



sambusa



uji



viazi vitamu



uwanga



njugu



mayai



soseji



pankeki



bekoni



viazi mbatata



nafaka



mgando



maharagwe



saladi ya matunda

Example:

Ningependa kujaribu maharagwe na viazi mbatata kwa sababu ni vyakula vya kuupa mwili nguvu na pia vina ladha nzuri.



Zoezi F

Find out about a classmate's food preferences using the questions below. Be prepared to report back to the class about your classmate's likes and dislikes.

- Wewe unapenda vyakula gani kwa kiamshakinywa?
- Wewe hula kiamshakinywa saa ngapi?
- Wewe hupendi kula vyakula gani kwa kiamshakinywa?



Zoezi G

Survey as many classmates as you can to find out what they like (and don't like) to eat for breakfast. Report back to the class about which classmates have common food interests.



Zoezi H

Shamila and Joseph go with a group of classmates to a local restaurant for breakfast one Saturday morning. They take pictures of their food and post them to their social media accounts. Write a list of the food items each one had for breakfast based on the pictures provided.

Chakula cha Shamila



- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.

Chakula cha Joseph



- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.

Sarufi: Virejeshi nomino/majina (*Object prefixes*)

As you already know, Kiswahili incorporates the subject of a sentence into the verb through the use of a subject prefix.

Je, **u**natoka nchi gani?
Mimi **ni**natoka Uingereza.

Which country do you come from?
I come from England.

Kiswahili may also mark the object of the verb (i.e., the person or thing that receives the action of the verb) within the verbal structure. An object prefix must agree with the noun to which it refers, and it must **always** be included when the object of the verb is an animate object, like a person, an animal or an insect.

The object prefix is inserted after the tense marker.

Nina**m**fundisha Juma.
Nina**m**fundisha.

I am teaching Juma.
I am teaching him/her.

Maria ali**m**nunulia mtoto wake viatu.
Maria ali**m**nunulia viatu.

Maria bought her child shoes.
Maria bought him/her shoes.

Notice in the examples above that the object prefix can also be used without the object noun, provided that the noun to which it refers has been previously mentioned or is clear from context.

Here is a complete list of prefixes to use when the object of the verb is a person.

	Object Prefix	Mfano	Example
1st sing.	-ni-	Ana ni fundisha.	He/she is teaching me .
2nd sing.	-ku-	Ana ku fundisha.	He/she is teaching you .
3rd sing.	-m-/-mw	Ana m fundisha.	He/she is teaching her/him .
1st pl.	-tu-	Ana tu fundisha.	He/she is teaching us .
2nd pl.	-wa-	Ana w afundisha.	He/she is teaching you all .
3rd pl.	-wa-	Ana w afundisha.	He/she is teaching them .

Note that the prefix *-wa* is used for both the 2nd and the 3rd person plural forms, but the meaning will always be clear from the context.

In the case where there are two objects in the sentence and one is animate, the object prefix must agree with that animate object.

Nili**w**afundisha **w**anafunzi hao sarufi.
Baba ali**m**nunulia **binti** yake viatu.

*I taught those **students** grammar.*
*The father bought his **daughter** shoes.*

When the object of the verb is an inanimate object, we can have both the object prefix and the object noun or just the object prefix (if the noun it is replacing is already known).

Maria aliv**inunua** **vi**atu.

Maria bought shoes.

Maria aliv**inunua**.

Maria bought them.

Nilik**ila** **ch**akula ambacho mama yangu alik**ipika**.

I ate the food that my mother prepared.

Nilik**ila** chakula.

I ate the food.

If there are two objects from different noun classes, the object marker is not used.

Nilinunua **ki**tabu na **ka**ratasi.

I bought a book and paper.

Baba ya Juma alipoteza **vi**tabu, kompyuta, na simu.

Juma's dad lost his books, computer, and phone.



Zoezi I

Add the object prefix to each sentence below.

Example:

Mwalimu anafundisha **kemia**. → Mwalimu ana**i**fundisha kemia

1. Anapika chakula cha jioni.
2. Alijenga nyumba kubwa.
3. Aliomba vyombo kutoka kwa jirani.
4. Babu alinunua zawadi nyingi.
5. Alinunua kalamu za rangi nyekundu.
6. Mama anasuka mtoto.
7. Alinunua vitu vingi alipoenda sokoni siku ya Jumamosi.
8. Juma alivua samaki wengi kutoka baharini.
9. Dereva aliendesha gari la kampuni kwa miaka mingi.
10. Mkulima aliuza ngómbe wake wote msimu wa kiangazi uliopita.



Zoezi J

Change the nouns in the following sentences into the plural forms, making the required changes to the verbs and adjectives to make them agree.

Example:

Juma ali**m**pa **m**toto **ch**akula **k**ibaya.

Juma ali**w**apa **w**atoto **vy**akula **v**ibaya.

1. Mwalimu huyo ananifundisha hesabu na kemia.
2. Kiti kilichovunjika ni cha mwalimu Bakari.
3. Nimemwona mgeni wa shangazi yangu.
4. Nilikipika chakula kwa haraka kwa sababu nilikuwa nimechoka sana.
5. Mama atanunua vyakula vingi kwa sababu atakuwa na wageni wengi.
6. Mtoto aliiharibu kompyuta ya baba yake.
7. Simu aliyoiharibu ilikuwa ya bei ghali sana.
8. Kitabu alichokinunua kilikuwa kimeraruka.
9. Ninamfahamu mwanafunzi mgeni.



Zoezi K

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate object prefix.

1. Daktari aliye___tibu mgonjwa anatoka kijiji cha Bondeni.
2. Nime___ona watoto wake sokoni.
3. Matunda aliyo___nunua yameharibika.
4. Chakula alich___andaa kiliungua wakati alipoenda nje.
5. Nyumba alizo___nunua ni za kifahari sana.
6. Tikiti alilo___nunua halina ladha tamu.
7. Simu na kompyuta walizo___uza ni za bandia.
8. Wanafunzi wali___maliza kazi za nyumbani?
9. Babu ali___fundisha wajukuu kucheza gita.
10. Wajukuu hu___tembelea babu yao kila mwezi wa Disemba.



Zoezi L

It is a Monday morning, and you have just run into some Kiswahili classmates that you had dinner with last Friday. Talk briefly about your experience at the restaurant. Use appropriate object prefixes in your conversation.

Sarufi: -JI- tegemezi (*Reflexive prefix -JI-*)

The reflexive prefix *-JI-* is used to express the idea of “oneself” in English. It also occurs in the object position of the subject and has only one form.

Shamila anajipikia chakula cha jioni.
*Shamila is preparing dinner for **herself**.*

Mimi hujinunulia vyakula.
*I buy food for **myself**.*

You will also see reflexives used in other situations:

Joseph anajitegemea kwa kila kitu.
*Joseph relies on **himself** for everything.*

Wanafunzi wanajisomea vitabu wenyewe.
*The students are reading the books for **themselves**.*



Zoezi M

Translate the following sentences into Kiswahili using the reflexive *-ji-* prefix. Then create 10 sentences of your own using the reflexive *-ji-* prefix.

1. Joseph cooks for himself.
2. Her sister braids her hair herself.
3. He buys his food himself.
4. Fifth grade students read the story books themselves.
5. I drove myself to the ceremony last night.
6. The sick doctor treated himself at home.
7. Juma bought himself the phone when he traveled to Mombasa.
8. Amina is teaching herself Kiswahili and French.
9. She likes to depend on herself.
10. She usually cooks her own meals.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____



Zoezi N

Using the *-ji-* reflexive, write one paragraph highlighting things that you do for yourself. Compare and contrast your notes with your classmates. Complete the graphic organizer below to show the common things and the differences.

Me	Shared	Classmate: _____



Zoezi O

A classmate has called with an offer to bring you breakfast from a local restaurant. Ask what options you have and then give them your food order.



Zoezi P

Joseph and Matata are walking to the cafeteria to grab lunch. On the way, they chat about different foods they would like to have for lunch. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Vipi Matata? Habari za mchana?

Matata: Salama Joseph. Je, unaenda kupata chakula cha mchana?

Joseph: Ndiyo, ninahisi njaa sana kwa hivyo ninaenda kula chakula cha mchana.

Matata: Je, wewe unapenda kula nini kwa chakula cha mchana hapa Tanzania?

Joseph: Ninapenda vyakula vingi vya hapa Tanzania. Kwa chakula cha mchana, ninapenda kula mchuzi wa nyama ya ng'ombe kwa chapati na mboga au sukumawiki, ugali na mchuzi wa nyama ya n'gombe. Na wewe je?

Matata: Mimi huwa sili nyama. Kwa hivyo kwa kawaida mimi hupenda kula mchuzi wa maharagwe kwa chapati au wali, matunda na mboga. Mimi sipendi kula ugali na sukumawiki kwa chakula cha mchana.

Joseph: Kwa nini hupendi sukumawiki na ugali kwa chakula cha mchana?

Matata: Sipendi ladha ya ugali kabisa.

Joseph: Mimi ninapenda ladha ya vyakula mbalimbali vya hapa Afrika mashariki isipokuwa mboga zingine za majani. Sipendi ladha ya mboga kwa sababu ni chungu sana.

Matata: Ninafurahi kusikia kwamba unapenda vyakula mbalimbali vya Afrika Mashariki.

Joseph: Asante sana.

1. Kwa nini Joseph anaenda kupata chakula cha mchana?
2. Joseph anapenda kula vyakula gani?
3. Je, Matata hula nyama?
4. Matata anapenda kula vyakula gani?
5. Kwa nini Matata hapendi kula sukumawiki na ugali?
6. Joseph hapendi vyakula gani vya Afrika Mashariki?
7. Wewe unapenda vyakula gani?



Zoezi Q

Shamila would like to invite one of her international classmates over for lunch at her host family's house, and Farida would like to know their food preferences. Shamila calls and leaves a voice message for her friend. Listen to the message and answer the questions below.

1. Nadia atatembelea familia pokezi ya Shamila siku gani?
2. Shamila atamsaidia Bibi Farida kufanya nini?
3. Nadia anahitaji kufanya nini akipokea ujumbe wa Shamila?



Zoezi R

You would like to invite your Kiswahili classmates over next weekend for lunch to celebrate your birthday. You would like to know their dietary restrictions so that you can serve a meal that everyone can eat. Here are a few phrases that might help in that conversation:

Huwa sinywi maziwa kwa sababu nina mzio.
I don't drink milk because I have allergies.

Sili njugu kwa sababu ya matatizo ya tumbo.
I don't eat peanuts because I have stomach problems.

Hasani hali nyama ya nguruwe kwa sababu ya desturi za dini ya kiisilamu.
Hassan does not eat pork because of Islamic religious restrictions.

Mimi ni mlamboga kwa hivyo huwa sili nyama.
I am a vegetarian, so I don't eat meat.



Zoezi S

You have invited two East African friends to your home for brunch. One of the guests is willing to eat almost anything that you serve, while the other is very selective about what they will eat. The host should describe the items that are being served, and the guests should respond about whether they would like to eat the food that is being offered. Role-play the scenario.



Zoezi T

One of your Kiswahili classmates has just returned from studying abroad in Tanzania, and you would like to learn more about what they ate while they were there. Role-play this scenario with a classmate and be prepared to report back to the class.



Zoezi U

The class will be having a group dinner. Work in groups with each group describing a different picture below and why it would be the best choice for the meal. You will need to present your description to the class so that the class can vote on a final choice.



Zoezi V

Discuss the following questions in small groups. Be prepared to share your responses with the rest of the class.

1. Katika nchi yako, kuna tofauti gani katika vyakula vinavyoliwa katika sehemu mbali mbali?
2. Vyakula katika utamaduni wako vinaandaliwa kwa njia gani?
3. Watu wengi katika jamii yako hula aina gani ya vyakula?



Zoezi W

Read the paragraph below about cuisines in various communities in Kenya and then prepare a short presentation to compare and contrast cuisines in your community. Be prepared to share the presentation with the class and respond to questions.



Kuna aina nyingi ya vyakula vitamu katika tamaduni mbali mbali nchini Kenya kuambatana na makabila tofauti. Kila unapotembelea maeneo mbali mbali, utagundua turathi za jamii za Kenya zinavyotofautiana kulingana na lishe na namna vyakula vinavyoandaliwa. Vyakula vya Kenya vinaambatana na makabila mbalimbali ambayo yana desturi na tamaduni tofauti. Makala haya yanaangazia baadhi ya vyakula maarufu nchini Kenya.

Ugali:

Ugali ni chakula ambacho hupendwa na watu wengi sana nchini Kenya. Ugali unatengenezwa kwa kutumia unga wa mahindi, mihogo, wimbi na mtama. Mara nyingi ugali huliwa kwa sukuma wiki, au mchicha, pamoja na mchuzi wa nyama au nyama iliyochomwa au kukaangwa. Ili kula chakula hiki unahitaji kuitumia mikono kwa hivyo unahitaji kunawa mikono kabla ya kula.

Pilau:

Pilau ni chakula maarufu ambacho asili yake ni ya kutoka bara hindi. Nchini Kenya pilau inaliwa zaidi katika sehemu za pwani. Ni chakula maarufu sana katika sherehe. Pilau ni mchele uliopikwa pamoja na vipande vya nyama, mbaazi, karanga na zabibu, ambazo rangi yake ya hudhurungi hutokana na kuungiwa ndani vitunguu na viungo vingine. Pia kuna pilau ya mboga pekee ambayo ina viungo kama njegere, viazi mbatata, vitunguu na viungo vingine.

Mutura:

Watu wengine huita matura “soseji ya kiafrika.” Ni soseji ya jamii za Kenya inayotengezwa kwa damu pamoja na viungo vingine kama vile nyama zilizosagwa na kuchanganywa na viungo vingine. Viungo hivi husokotwa ndani ya utumbo wa ng'ombe au mbuzi, damu iliyoganda na kuchanganywa na vitunguu, chumvi na pilipili. Kisha mchanganyiko huu huchomwa kwa kutumia jiko la makaa. Mutura ukishaiva hukatwakatwa katika vipande vidogo na huliwa na kachumbari na pilipili.

Matoke:

Matoke ni mojawapo wa vyakula vinavyoliwa sana nchini Kenya. Ndizi ambazo hazijaiva hupikwa kwa njia mbali mbali kama vile kuchemshwa, kuchomwa, kukaangwa na wakati mwingine kupondwapondwa. Matoke huliwa na mchuzi wa nyama ya ng'ombe au kuku, au mchuzi wa maharagwe na mboga. Chakula hiki huliwa wakati wowote wa siku.

Chapati:

Chapati ni mkate unaopendwa sana na watu wengi nchini Kenya. Chakula hiki huandaliwa wakati wa sherehe nyingi. Ni rahisi mno kutayarisha chapati. Chapati hutengenezwa kwa kutumia unga wa ngano, chumvi, na mafuta. Wakenya hula chapati kwa mchuzi wa nyama, maharagwe, au nafaka zingine.

Mukimo:

Mukimo ni chakula kinachoenziwa sana na baadhi ya jamii za Kenya haswa kutoka sehemu ya kati. Hutayarishwa kutoka kwa viazi, mboga, mahindi, na vitunguu. Viungo hivi huchemshwa kisha huchanganywa na kupondwapondwa hadi viwe laini.

Pure:

Chakula hiki huwa mchanganyiko wa mahindi na maharagwe. Mahindi na maharagwe huchemshwa kabla ya kukaangwa pamoja kwa kitunguu, nyanya na viungo vingine. Ni chakula maarufu cha kula baada ya kufanya kazi ngumu na pia ni chakula cha kila siku kwa wanafunzi wengi shuleni.

1. Ugali hutengenezwa kwa kutumia aina gani ya unga?
2. Kwa nini mutura unaitwa “soseji ya kiafrika?”
3. Kuna aina ngapi za pilau? Taja aina hizo.
4. Matoke hupikwa kwa njia gani?
5. Kwa nini pure ni chakula maarufu?
6. Je, unahitaji viungo gani kuandaa chapati?
7. Mukimo ni chakula maarufu kwenye sehemu gani za Kenya?
8. Ni vyakula gani viwili ambavyo vinatengenezwa kwa kupondwapondwa?
9. Kati ya vyakula vya Kenya ambavyo vimeelezwa unapenda chakula gani zaidi? Eleza kwa nini?
10. Toa maelezo mafupi ya aina moja ya chakula maarufu katika jamii yako na jinsi kinavyopikwa.



Zoezi X

Read the text about Tanzanian cuisine and answer the questions that follow.

Vyakula vya Afrika Mashariki (Tanzania)

Watanzania wengi wanaoishi mijini na vijini wanapenda vyakula ambavyo vina nguvu kama vile mahindi, wali, mihogo, wimbi, mtama na ndizi. Watu kutoka sehemu za kaskazini mashariki wanapenda ugali wa mahindi au wimbi na ndizi. Vyakula hivi vyenye nguvu huliwa pamoja na mchuzi wa samaki, nyama ya ng'ombe, nyama ya mbuzi, kuku au nyama zilizokaangwa pamoja na mboga kama vile sukumawiki, mchicha, kabeji, biringani, brokoli, pilipili hoho na uyoga. Pia wao wanapenda vyakula vya asili ya kihindi kama vile chapati, sambusa, biriyani, au pilau. Katika sherehe nyingi wao huandaa mapochopocho kama vile pilau, viazi mbatata, chapati, michuzi ya nyama mbalimbali, nyama choma na matunda. Pombe huandaliwa kwa sherehe nyingine kama ishara ya utamaduni. Pombe hazitumiwi katika sherehe nyingi za kidini. Kwa kawaida katika sherehe nyingi huwa na vinywaji kama vile soda, chai, na maji ya matunda.

Kiamshakinywa katika jamii nyingi kinalingana na mapato ya watu na pia utamaduni na asili za jamii husika. Katika jamii nyingi watu wanapenda mikate, mandazi pamoja na kahawa au chai yenye viungo, sukari, na maziwa. Vyakula vingine ambavyo vinauzwa mitaani ni kama vile ndizi za kukaangwa, viazi vitamu, mahindi ya kuchoma, njugu karanga, samaki wa kukaangwa, sambusa, mkate, tende, mishikaki, nyama ya mbuzi au nyama ya ng'ombe ya kuchomwa. Kwenye baa nyingi mitaani kuna pombe za kienyeji. Kwa kawaida, watu hula nyama choma yenye viungo mbali mbali pamoja na kachumbari.

1. Vyakula gani huandaliwa katika sherehe nyingi nchini Tanzania?
2. Kwa kiamshakinywa watu wengi nchini Tanzania hula vyakula gani?
3. Kuna vyakula gani vya mitaani nchini Tanzania?
4. Je, pombe huandaliwa katika kila sherehe nchini Tanzania?
5. Je, kuna vyakula vya mitaani sehemu unayotoka?

Cultural Explorations

Mealtimes in East Africa are regarded as occasions for families and friends to enjoy each other's company and build social ties. Dining spaces across East Africa are nearly as varied as the people that inhabit the region. From western dining tables and chairs to short stools next to tables the height of a coffee table to eating on cushions on the floor. The table or floor merely provides a setting for food and fellowship, which follow quite distinct social rules in Swahili culture.

If seating is limited, senior male members of the household are given priority, with others (particularly children) eating at a different time or eating wherever they can find space. In larger families, several tables may be used, with groups divided by generation or perhaps along gender lines. A guest is given a priority seating in a household. In most families it is common for the host to say a prayer of thanksgiving before people start eating. The guest is free to begin eating after the thanksgiving prayer. Your host is likely to fill your plate as it becomes empty. Your cup

will likely be refilled as soon as it is more than half empty, but you should always wait to be served rather than pouring your own drink.

It is common for people to eat without using silverware, particularly in cases in which *ugali* is served. One simply takes a portion of *ugali* and makes a round shape with a slight indentation that can be used like an edible spoon with dishes like vegetables or stew. Thorough handwashing is expected before and after the meal, and in some households, the hostess may go from guest to guest with a bowl of water and soap. Even after washing your hands, you only touch the food with your right hand as the left is culturally prohibited.

Hospitality toward guests is an ingrained cultural practice with clear expectations on both sides. The host is expected to provide refreshments upon someone's arrival or shortly thereafter. These offerings are presented without first asking, as not making the offer quickly enough (and forcing the guest to ask for something) may suggest that the host is either rude or stingy. In some cases, a guest might decline the host's offer, initiating a ritual negotiation between the guest and the host. The host must try to persuade the guest to accept the offer while the guest must refuse the generous offer, knowing that the offer will eventually need to be accepted. The guest must eat or drink at least a little of what is served even if they are full as a reciprocation of the kind gesture.

Hosts go to great lengths to make sure that the quality of food offered honors their guests, often at great economic sacrifice to themselves. To honor special guests, a host might even slaughter their own livestock – a chicken or goat would be common options – to prepare a special meal. Although taking visitors to a restaurant or ordering food to eat at home is becoming more common in urban areas, older generations may feel disrespected if a home-cooked meal is not offered.

It is typical for guests to offer presents to their hosts. Common gifts include a special food or drink, special fabrics, grains and cereals, and household items. Special guests may also be given gifts in return when they depart; common examples of these gifts are maize, beans, fruits, or even animals from the host's own livestock or poultry. These gifts of agricultural goods are rooted in the farming economy in rural areas where the exchange of goods was also a means to share specialized crops and ensure the success of both families. Guests coming from abroad would be expected to bring something representative of their own culture or region.

Many East Africans, including those in urban areas, believe that guests bring blessings to the home and that the degree of blessing is tied to the degree of hospitality that is offered.

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. When are meals eaten in your culture? Is there a meal that is thought to be the most important? Is there a meal that you often skip? If yes, which one and why?
2. Are there particular dishes in your culture that are generally eaten with your hands? Is there any variation in how people view this practice? For example, do you believe that pizza should be eaten with a knife and fork?
3. What are the expectations of a host in your culture? Are there any distinctions between preparing a home cooked meal and offering pre-packaged or store-bought meals?
4. Are guests in your culture expected to bring gifts when invited to someone's home? If so, what are typical things to bring? What kinds of gifts would you bring to an East African home?

5. Does your culture have specific expectations or rules about where people sit at the dinner table? Or perhaps, at which table they are allowed to sit.



Zoezi Y

For their Kiswahili class, Shamila and Joseph are preparing presentations about their favorite East African meal. Research East African cuisine and find a specific meal that you would like to try or have already tried. Prepare a presentation with pictures that explain the ingredients in the meal, when it is eaten, and where it is most commonly eaten in East Africa.



Zoezi Z

Share your presentation from the previous activity with the class. Be prepared to answer any follow-up questions that your classmates or instructor may have.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

baadhi (ya) some (of); a few (of)
bandia artificial; fake
baridi (si baridi) cold (not cold)
-bila ladha tasteless
chachu sour; bitter
-chungu bitter; strong
-enye kuchukiza disgusting
-enye ladha tasty
-enye viungo spicy; with spices
-ghali expensive
-gumu tough; difficult; hard
laini soft; tender; smooth
maarufu popular; famous
mno too much; extreme
joto hot
muhimu important
murwa pleasing; nice; elegant
nuka unpleasant smelling
nukia pleasant smelling
pekee only; just
rahisi simple; easy
-tamu sweet; delicious
uvundo foul smelling
vichache few (referring to food)
vingi many (referring to food)
vuguvugu lukewarm
vumba smelling of fish
zaidi more

Conjunctions

ingawa even though
iwapo if
lakini but

Demonstratives

hiki this
hicho that
kile that over there
hivi these
hivyo those
vile those over there
-pale; kule over there (far from the speaker)

Nouns

baa	bar
barafu	ice
bei	price
bekoni; nyama ya nguruwe	bacon
bia	beer
borohoa; kihembe	thick broth of cooked beans
chai	tea
chai ya maziwa	milk tea
chapati	Indian flat bread
chumvi	salt
chupa	bottle
dengu	mung beans; lentils
desturi	custom; tradition
dini	religion
divai; mvinyo	wine
glasi (ya juisi)	a glass (of juice)
harusi	wedding
ishara	symbol; sign
jamii	group; community
jibini	cheese
jirani	neighbor
juisi	juice
kabila	ethnicity
kachumbari	a fresh relish made from diced tomatoes, onions, cilantro, and lime juice
kahawa	coffee
kande; pure	mixture of maize and beans
karanga	peanuts; groundnuts
kiamshakinywa	breakfast
vibanzi	french fries
kikombe	cup
kikombe (cha chai; cha kahawa)	cup (of tea; of coffee)
kimanda	toast
kipande	piece; fragment
kitunguu	onion
kiu	thirst
krimu	cream
kuku	chicken (animal)
ladha	taste; flavor
lishe	nutrition
mafuta	fat; oil
maharagwe	beans
mahindi	corn
maji	water
maji ya matunda	fruit juice
maji ya nazi	coconut water
malenge	pumpkin
mandazi	bun; buns
mapato	income
matoke; ndizi	banana
matumbo	intestines; tripe

maziwa milk
mbatata Irish potatoes
mboga vegetables
mboga za majani leafy vegetables; greens
mchanganyiko mixture
mchele uncooked rice
mchicha spinach
mchuuzi seller; vendor
mchuzi stew
mchuzi wa samaki fish stew
menu menu
mishikaki skewers; kebabs
mkate bread
mkebe tin
msimu season; period
muhogo cassava
mwili body (human body)
nafaka grain; cereal
namna sort; kind
nguruwe pig; swine
nguvu strength; power
nishati/wanga energy; strength
njaa hunger
nyama meat
nyama ya... meat of...
 ... **kondoo** sheep (mutton)
 ... **kuchoma** roasted or grilled meat
 ... **kuku** chicken
 ... **mbuzi** goat
 ... **ng'ombe** cow (beef)
 ... **nguruwe** pig (pork)
 ... **wanyama wa baharini** seafood
nyanya tomato
pakiti packet
pankeki pancakes
pasta pasta
pilau a spicy rice dish cooked with meat and vegetables
pilipili pepper
pizza pizza
pombe alcohol
pombe kali hard alcohol (liquor)
rojo thick gravy; paste
saladi ya (matunda) (fruit) salad
samaki fish
sambusa samosa
sandwichi sandwich
siagi butter
sima; ugali stiff cornmeal porridge
soda soda
soseji sausage
sukari sugar

sukumawiki collard greens
supu soup
tende date (fruit)
tikiti watermelon
tunda fruit
uji porridge
viazi vitamu sweet potatoes
vinywaji drinks
vitunguu onions
viungo ingredients
vyakula foods
vyakula vya mikono finger foods
wali cooked rice
yai egg
zabibu grape; raisin
zawadi present; gift

Prepositions

bila without
hadi until
isipokuwa except; unless
kwa by
pamoja na together with
tangu since; from

Verbs

-andaa to prepare
-chemsha to boil
-cheua to belch
-choka to be tired; to be exhausted
-choma to burn; to roast
-furahia to enjoy
-haribu to spoil; to destroy
-hisi/kuwa na njaa/ sikia njaa to feel hungry (to be hungry)
-hitaji to need
-iva to become ripe; to ripen; to be cooked
-jaribu to try
-jua to know
-kaanga to fry
-kaangwa to be fried
-kula to eat
-kupiga miayo to yawn
-kuwa na kiu to be thirsty
-kuwa na ladha tamu to have a sweet taste
-kuwa na mzio to have allergies
-lika to be edible
-nawa (mikono) to wash (your hands)
-nywa to drink
-oka to bake
-ondoa to remove; to take away

-oza to rot
-penda to like
-pendelea to prefer
-shiba to be full or satisfied
-taja to name; to list
-tayarisha to prepare
-tengeneza to make

**Please note that all verbs are listed as the stem. The English translation suggests that it is the infinitive, which would actually correspond to the ku- infinitive form in Kiswahili. This is the model that will be followed throughout the book.*

Key Phrases

...na kadhalika. ...and so on.
Asante kwa chakula. Thank you for the meal.
Chakula hiki ni kitamu/kina ladha nzuri. This food is delicious/has a good taste.
haipo... it is not there...
Ili... in order to...
kama ungepata nafasi ya... if you had the chance to...
Karibu kwa chakula. Welcome to the meal.
kwa haraka in a hurry
kwa mikono yako with your hands.
Kwa nini unapiga miayo? Why are you yawning?
matatizo ya tumbo stomach problems
mimi huwa sili... I don't always eat...
Mimi ni mlamboga. I'm a vegetarian.
Nimeshiba. I am satisfied/full.
Nina kiu. I am thirsty.
Nina njaa/Ninahisi njaa. I am hungry.
Ninaweza kunawa mikono? Can I clean my hands?
ningependa kujaribu... I would like to try...
Si joto It is not hot.
Sili...kwa sababu ya... I don't eat...because of...
tafadhali nifahamishe kuhusu... please let me know about/inform me about...
Una mzio kwa chakula chochote? Do you have any food allergies?
Unapenda kula vyakula gani wakati wa asubuhi/mchana/jioni? What foods do you like to eat in the morning/afternoon/evening?
Unavipenda vyakula gani haswa? What are your favorite foods?
Ungependa kula chakula gani? What food would you like to eat?
Usisumbuke hata (kidogo). Don't even bother (at all).
Utavifurahia bila shaka. You will definitely enjoy them.
Wewe hupendi kula vyakula gani? What foods don't you like to eat?

5.2. Kwenda mkahawani



Zoezi A

Shamila and Bibi Farida are in the city center and stop at a local restaurant to have something to drink before they go home. Read their conversation with the waiter and answer the questions that follow.



Mhudumu: Hamjambo?

Shamila na Farida: Hatujambo kaka.

Mhudumu: Habari za jioni?

Shamila na Farida: Salama sana. Na wewe je?

Mhudumu: Salama pia. Karibuni sana katika Mkahawa wa Iroko. Mimi nitakuwa mhudumu wenu leo.

Farida: Asante sana.

Shamila: Mkahawa una mandhari mazuri sana. Nina kiu sana.

Mhudumu: Je, mngenda kunywa vinywaji gani leo? Tuna maji ya matunda, chai, kahawa, soda na vinywaji vingine vingi. Hii hapa ni menyu ya vinywaji yetu.

Shamila: Mimi ningependa maji ya maembe. Je, mna kinywaji spesheli leo?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, kuna juisi ya mchanganyiko wa nanasi na tikiti. Ungenda kujaribu juisi hiyo?

Shamila: Ndiyo, nitajaribu juisi hiyo. Ningependa juisi baridi sana. Kwa hivyo tia barafu kidogo. Bibi Farida ungependa kunywa kinywaji gani?

Farida: Ningependa kunywa chai.

Mhudumu: Je, Bibi Farida ungependa chai ya maziwa au chai bila maziwa?

Farida: Ningependa chai ya maziwa ambayo ina tangawizi.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Je, mngependa vitafunio vyovyote? Tuna sambusa, mahamri, na keki.

Farida: Hapana, tungependa kunywa vinywaji pekee.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Subirini kidogo nitalewaletea vinywaji vyenu hivi punde.

Farida na Shamila: Asante.

1. Shamila na Bibi Farida walienda kwenye mkahawa gani?
2. Shamila angependa kunywa kinywaji gani?
3. Bibi Farida angependa kunywa kinywaji gani?
4. Kulikuwa na kinywaji gani spesheli kwenye mkahawa?
5. Je, Shamila na Farida wangependa kula vitafunio vyovyote?
6. Unapoenda mkahawani, wewe hupenda kuagiza vinywaji gani?



Zoezi B

The waiter comes back to Shamila and Farida's table to check on them and to bring them the bill. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Mhudumu: Je, vinywaji vyenu vikoje?

Shamila: Juisi yangu ni tamu sana. Nimependa sana ladha ya nanasi na tikiti.

Mhudumu: Ninafurahi kusikia kuwa umependa kinywaji hicho. Tulitumia matunda mazuri kukiandaa kinywaji. Je, mama umependa chai yako?

Farida: Ndiyo, chai yangu imekuwa nzuri sana pia. Tangawizi na majani yamekolea vizuri sana.

Mhudumu: Ninafurahi kusikia kuwa umependa chai yako. Gharama ya vinywaji ni shilingi elfu mbili.

Farida: Pesa ndizo hizi.

Mhudumu: Asante sana. Karibuni sana tena wakati mwingine.

Farida na Shamila: Asante sana na kwaheri.

Mhudumu: Kwaherini.

1. Kwa nini Shamila alipenda kinywaji chake?
2. Kwa nini Bibi Farida alipenda kinywaji chake?
3. Bei ya vinywaji ilikuwa shilingi ngapi?



Zoezi C

Shamila, Joseph, and a few of their classmates would like to go to a local restaurant downtown one Friday evening to unwind. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.

1. Je, Shamila, Joseph na wenzao wamemaliza vipindi vyao vya masomo?
2. Je, Shamila angependa kujiunga na Joseph na wenzake kwenye mkahawa wa Kijitonyama?
3. Kuna vinywaji gani katika mkahawa wa Kijitonyama?
4. Joseph na Shamila wanatarajia kupata burudani gani kwenye mkahawa wa Kijitonyama?
5. Shamila anatarajia kufika katika mkahawa wa Kijitonyama saa ngapi?



Zoezi D

One evening, you want to go out with your friends to unwind and grab a few drinks. You call two or three friends to see if they are available and would like to join you, but they are having trouble agreeing on where to go. Role-play these phone conversations to decide when and where you plan to go out and why you like or dislike certain venues.



Zoezi E

You are out in downtown Dar es Salaam with your friends on a weekend night. With a classmate, role-play a conversation at a club, where one of you is the patron and the other is the bartender. Make sure to discuss the different types of beverages (alcoholic and non-alcoholic) that are available and how much they cost. Include any drink specials that the club offers.



Zoezi F

One afternoon, Joseph meets his classmate after class. They decide to go to the cafeteria and have lunch together. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions below.

1. Kwa nini Matata anasema amechoka sana?
2. Joseph na Matata wameamua kwenda kula chakula cha mchana katika mkahawa gani?
3. Kwa nini wameuchagua mkahawa huo?
4. Kuna aina gani za burudani katika mkahawa huo?
5. Wewe unapenda kula katika mikahawa gani?
6. Wewe unapenda mikahawa ambayo ina burudani gani?



Zoezi G

Joseph and Matata arrive at *Karafuu* restaurant. Read their conversation with the waiter and answer the questions that follow.

Mhudumu: Hamjambo?

Joseph na Matata: Hatujambo.

Mhudumu: Habari za mchana? Karibuni sana katika mkahawa wa *Karafuu*. Leo tuna burudani safi kabisa na pia vyakula maalum.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tunatazamia kula vyakula vizuri na kupata burudani safi.

Mhudumu: Menyu za vinywaji na vyakula ndizo hizi hapa. Kinywaji spesheli cha leo ni maji ya dafu yaliyochanganywa na maji ya nazi. Kinywaji hiki kina virutubishi muhimu vya afya. Je, mngenda kujaribu kinywaji hiki?

Joseph: Bila shaka mimi ningependa kujaribu kinywaji hicho. Ningependa kinywaji baridi sana. Matata, ungependa kujaribu kinywaji hiki pia?

Matata: Samahani mimi huwasitumii nazi wala maji ya nazi kwa sababu nina mzio. Nitakunywa chai.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Nitawaletea vinywaji hivi baada ya dakika chache.

Joseph na Matata: Sawa.

(They each look at the menu and discuss what to order.)

Mhudumu: Karibuni kwa vinywaji. Je, mko tayari kuagiza vyakula vyenu?

Joseph: Mimi ningependa chakula ambacho kina mchanganyiko wa vyakula mbalimbali vya baharini. Je, chakula hiki kina samaki gani wa baharini?

Mhudumu: Chakula hiki ni mchanganyiko maalum wa pweza, ngisi, kambare, changu, sangara na ngege.

- Joseph:** Safi kabisa. Ningependa kula chakula hicho. Je, chakula hiki kinaliwa pamoja na nini?
- Mhudumu:** Kinaliwa na wali mweupe, viazi vya kupondwa, viazi vya kukaangwa au mboga. Je, ungependa kula chakula hiki pamoja na nini?
- Joseph:** Ningependa kula chakula hiki pamoja na viazi vya kukaangwa. Pia ningependa saladini ya mboga.
- Mhudumu:** Sawa. (*Turns to Matata.*) Je, kaka ungependa kuagiza nini?
- Matata:** Mimi ningependa kula nyama ya ng'ombe. Je, nyama hii hupikwaje?
- Mhudumu:** Chaguo nzuri. Nyama hii imekaangwa kwa mafuta na kupambwa na vitunguu vilivyopikwa kwa mvinyo wa rangi nyekundu, siagi na mchanganyiko maalum wa viungo mbalimbali.
- Matata:** Je, nyama hii huliwa pamoja na nini?
- Mhudumu:** Nyama hii huliwa na viazi vilivyopondwa, au wali mweupe au vibanzi pamoja na saladini. Je, ungependa kuchagua nini?
- Matata:** Ningependa vibanzi, saladini ya mboga na wali wa nazi.
- Mhudumu:** Sawa. Subirini kidogo chakula kitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika kumi na tano. Bendi ya *Sauti Sol* inacheza muziki katika sehemu ya nyuma. Mnaweza kuitazama bendi hii mkisubiri chakula chenu na kubarizi pale nje.
- Matata na Joseph:** Safi kabisa tutapumzika pale nje tukisubiri chakula chetu. Je, unaweza kutuletea chakula chetu pale nje kikiwa tayari?
- Mhudumu:** Ndiyo, hamna shida. Nitafanya hivyo. Karibuni na mstarehe.

1. Joseph na Matata walienda kula katika mkahawa gani?
2. Chakula alichogiza Joseph kina mchanganyiko gani wa samaki wa baharini?
3. Matata aliagiza vyakula gani?
4. Kwa nini Matata hakuagiza kinywaji maalum cha siku hiyo?
5. Leo, kuna burudani gani katika mkahawa wa *Karafuu*?
6. Matata na Joseph watasubiri chakula chao kwa muda gani?
7. Matata na Joseph wangependa kula chakula chao katika sehemu gani ya hoteli?



Zoezi H

After serving Joseph and Matata their food, the waiter returns to check on them. Read the conversation below and answer the questions that follow.

Mhudumu: Vyakula vyenu vikoje?

Matata na Joseph: Vyakula ni tamu sana.

Joseph: Ninapenda sana ladha na harufu ya vyakula vyangu.

Mhudumu: Na wewe je kaka?

Matata: Mimi pia ninapenda ladha ya nyama. Pia saladini tamu sana. Ningependa kuongeza pilipili kidogo. Tafadhali nisaide na pilipili.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Pilipili manga ndiyo hii hapa.

Joseph: Tafadhali tusaidie na maji baridi ya kunywa.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Mngenda maji ya glasi au ya chupa?

Matata: Ningependa maji ya glasi yaliyo na barafu.

Joseph: Mimi ningependa maji ya chupa.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Nitajumlisha bei ya maji pamoja na bei ya vyakula.

Matata na Joseph: Sawa.

Mhudumu: Maji yenu ndiyo haya. Na hii ni risiti ya malipo yenu. Mkiwa tayari mnaweza kulipa kwa kadi au kwa pesa taslimu.

Joseph: Nitalipa kwa kadi. Hii hapa. Asante sana kwa huduma yako.

Mhudumu: Mnakaribishwa tena katika mkahawa wetu wa *Karafuu*.

1. Vyakula ambavyo Matata na Joseph waliagiza vilikuwaje?
2. Joseph na Matata wangenda kuongezewa kitu chochote kwenye chakula walichokiagiza?
3. Je, wao watalipa malipo yao ya vyakula kwa njia gani?
4. Unafikiri, Joseph na Matata wamepata huduma nzuri katika mkahawa wa *Karafuu*? Eleza kwa nini?



Zoezi I

You are out at a restaurant with friends during a trip to East Africa. In groups of three, create a conversation where two members of the group are ordering lunch, and the third person is a person taking the order.

 Zoezi J

You and a friend are at a restaurant in downtown Dar es Salaam for lunch. You have finished your meal, and the waiter comes back to your table to ask whether you would like anything else. Ask the waiter for more drinks and the bill.

 Zoezi K

You haven't seen one of your friends from your Kiswahili class in a while, and you would like to catch up over dinner at their favorite restaurant. Work with a classmate to create a dialogue to arrange the dinner. Make sure to include details of time, place, and which meal(s) you would like to order. Be ready to act out your dialogue.

 Zoezi L

On your way to the library one afternoon, one of your Kiswahili classmates asks if you would like to join them for lunch at a restaurant downtown. Decline the invitation as you have to meet one of your professors to review for an upcoming quiz.

 Zoezi M

One evening, Joseph and a group of his classmates decide to order dinner. Listen to Joseph's phone conversation with the restaurant and answer the questions below.

1. Joseph ameagiza vyakula gani?
2. Joseph ameagiza vinywaji gani?
3. Vyakula vitakuwa tayari baada ya muda gani?
4. Joseph angependa kununua kiasi gani cha nyama?
5. Joseph atalipia vyakula vyake kwa njia gani?
6. Kwa nini Joseph hatalipa malipo ya kupelekewa vyakula nyumbani?

 Zoezi N

There is a restaurant in your neighborhood that serves authentic East African food. One weekend, a few of your classmates stop by, and you decide to order dinner. Ask them what they would like to have and then call the restaurant to place your delivery order. Your teacher will play the role of the person working at the restaurant. Be ready to give your address and answer any other questions the restaurant attendant might have.

Sarufi: **-me-** ya wakati uliopo hali timilifu (*Present perfect tense*)

In Kiswahili, the tense marker **-me-** is used to convey that an action has just been completed. This **-me-** timilifu is similar to the English present perfect structure of *have/has + past participle* and can be conveyed with the word “just.”

Maria a**mepika** chakula cha asubuhi.

Maria has just cooked breakfast.

Tu**mekula** chakula cha mchana katika Mkahawa wa Masinga.

We have just eaten lunch at the Masinga restaurant.

Mwalimu a**mefika** mapema.

The teacher has just arrived early.

Mwanafunzi a**memaliza** kazi ya nyumbani.

The student has just finished homework.

When there are multiple actions or a narration of things that have happened in the past, the first verb will take the tense marker **-li-** and the last verb will take the marker **-me-**. Any other verb will take the **-ka-** marker of narration.

Niliamka mapema na ni**mepika** chakula cha asubuhi.

I woke up early, and I have just made breakfast.

Nili**impeleka** mtoto shuleni na ni**meenda** ofisini.

I dropped the child at school, and I have just gone to the office.

Niliamka mapema, ni**kapika** chakula cha asubuhi, ni**kasafisha** nyumba, na sasa ni**memaliza** kufagia.

I woke up early, cooked breakfast, cleaned the house, and now I have just finished sweeping.

Nili**enda** sokoni asubuhi ni**kanunua** viatu, ni**kampelekea** mwanafunzi shuleni na sasa ni**merudi** kutoka shuleni.

I went to the market in the morning, bought shoes, took them to the student in the school and I have just returned from school.



Zoezi O

Translate the following sentences into Kiswahili using the *-me-* tense marker.

1. He has cooked the food.
2. He has arrived in Tanzania.
3. Mwajuma has washed all the clothes.
4. She has taken the children to school.
5. They have just bought many shoes from the market today.
6. Parents have arrived at the school for the meeting.
7. The chefs have prepared delicious food.
8. Juma has bought many spices from the market.
9. It has started raining.
10. I have just eaten dinner at her house.



Zoezi P

Write 10 sentences using the *-me-* tense marker. Use the following verbs in your sentence constructions.

-safisha | -pakua | -uza | -lipa | -maliza | -anza
 -agiza | -paka | -lala | -chomeka | -ongeza | -weka



Zoezi Q

As you are walking to the library one afternoon, you meet a friend who is heading to another building on campus. Exchange greetings and discuss three things you have been doing or have recently just completed.



Zoezi R

One of your classmates has gone downtown to run errands. Text them to check on their whereabouts and whether the errands they were running have been completed.

Sarufi: -ja- kanushi ya wakati uliopo hali timilifu (*The negated present perfect -ja- tense*)

The -ja- tense is used in Kiswahili to imply that an event has not yet happened, or some anticipated result has not yet been achieved. It is used together with the negative subject prefix of the verbal structure.

Bado **sijapika** chakula cha asubuhi.
*I **have not yet** cooked breakfast.*

Bado wanafunzi **hawajafika** shuleni.
*The students **have not yet** arrived at school.*

Bado wauzaji **hawajafungua** soko.
*The sellers **have not yet** opened the markets.*

Bado mwalimu **hajaenda** shuleni.
*The teacher **has not yet** gone to school.*

Monosyllabic verbs that contain -ja- do not retain the -ku- infinitive in their negation.

Ni**mekula** chakula leo.
Sijala chakula leo.

*I **have** eaten food today.*
*I **have not** eaten food today.*

A**mekuja** nyumbani asubuhi.
Hajaja nyumbani asubuhi.

*He **has** come home in the morning.*
*He **has not** come home in the morning.*

Notice in these examples that the negative form of the verb is not *Sijakula* nor *Hajakuja*; while the -ku- is needed when the verb tense -me- is used in the positive sense, the -ku- is dropped when the phrase is expressed in the negative form. Here are some additional examples of the different negated forms of tenses that have already been covered in previous units.

Tu**likula** chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
We ate East African food.

Hatukula chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **did not** eat East African food.*

Tu**mekula** chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **have** eaten East African food.*

Hatujala chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **have not** eaten East African food.*

Hatutakula chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **will not** eat East African food.*



Zoezi S

Change the following sentences from the *-me-* tense to the *-ja-* tense and provide a reason for why the action in the sentence has not yet happened.

Example:

Nimenunua viatu hivi leo asubuhi. →
Sijanunua viatu hivi leo asubuhi kwa sababu sina pesa.

1. Amefika leo asubuhi.
2. Wanafunzi wamemnunulia mwalimu zawadi.
3. Watoto wamekula chakula cha asubuhi mapema.
4. Wamemwandikia meneja wa Kampuni barua leo asubuhi.
5. Nimenunua vyakula vingi.
6. Amewaalika wageni wengi nyumbani kwake.
7. Tumepotea njia ya kwenda msikitini.
8. Tumefurahi kumaliza kazi zetu.
9. Amekuja kumpeleka mtoto shuleni.
10. Nimerudi nyumbani.



Zoezi T

You are going on a field trip with Joseph one Saturday morning. You receive the following email from Joseph. Write an appropriate response.

Vipi rafiki,

Habari za asubuhi? Ninatumai uko salama leo. Habari za ziara ya pwani leo? Samahani nitachelewa sana kufika huko leo. Nimechelewa kwa sababu sijaweza kupata basi la saa moja. Pia nimeamka saa hivi kwa hivyo bado sijaoga, sijavaa mavazi mwafaka, na pia sijala chakula cha asubuhi. Nitajiunga nanyi baadaye mwendo wa saa saba hivi mchana.

Wasalaam,

Joseph



Zoezi U

Listen to the radio advertisement for a new restaurant that is opening in your town and answer the questions below.

1. Je, matangazo ya biashara huwa na maana yoyote?
2. Je, lugha inayotumiwa katika matangazo ya biashara huwa inawalenga wateja wote au wateja fulani tu?
3. Lugha ilitumiwa namna gani katika tangazo hili?
4. Je, kuna umuhimu wa kuweka mauzo ya bei nafuu wakati unapotengeneza tangazo hili?
5. Taja sababu ya umuhimu wa kutaja mahali na wakati wa kufunguliwa kwa mkahawa wa shirika la Glamo katika kifungu hiki?



Zoezi V

Read the descriptions of two restaurants below. If you had the opportunity to go to one of the restaurants, which restaurant would you go to and why?

Mkahawa wa Asali na Dough Nairobi, Kenya	Mkahawa wa Cinnamon Zanzibar, Tanzania
Huu ni mkahawa wa kisasa ambao una vyakula vyenye ladha tamu. Vyakula ni vya hali ya juu na huduma ni za haraka. Huwa tunauza vinywaji na vyakula mbambali siku nzima. Tunaanza kwa kahawa na chai wakati wa asubuhi, kisha kuna, chakula cha mchana na chakula cha jioni. Unaweza kula ndani ya mkahawa au una uhuru wa kuagiza vyakula kupitia mtandaoni. Mkahawa una pizza maalum, na vyakula kutoka tamaduni mbalimbali za Kenya, duka la mikate, na baa. Mkahawa umezingatia lishe safi na yenye afya ambayo imepewa kipaumbele na watu wengi jijini Nairobi.	Mkahawa wa Cinnamon ni wa kulisimua. Uko kwenye ghorofa ya kwanza. Una baa ambayo iko wazi na unaweza kukata kiu chako kwa bia baridi, maji, soda, au mivinyo mbali mbali. Mkahawa wa Cinnamon uko mahali ambapo pana mandhari mazuri ya kisiwa cha Zanzibar. Unaweza kutulia na kutazama jua linapotua na kubarizi vema. Iwapo unatafuta kitu spesheli tunaweza kutenga sehemu zingine za faragha kwenye baa kwa sherehe za kibinafsi wakati wa jioni. Menyu za Cinnamon zina vyakula vya kimataifa kutoka sehemu kama Asia, Uropa, Marekani na kwingeneko duniani. Kuna vyakula kama vile samaki, vibanzi, saladi na kadhalika.



Zoezi W

Write a review for a restaurant that you visited recently. Include details about customer service, quality of food, and overall cost. Be prepared to share your review with your classmates and to respond to any questions that they may have.



Zoezi X

You are visiting Diani Beach in Mombasa, Kenya with some classmates and you need to choose a restaurant for lunch. Use the internet to find a restaurant that appeals to you. Be ready to discuss the reason for your choice and what you plan to order. Note that many of the menus will be in English.

Cultural Explorations

Commercial food options in East Africa are rapidly expanding, with fast food options (burgers, pizza, wings) taking their place alongside more traditional, local options. Local foods will vary by region with areas along the coast showing a greater reliance on seafood than areas in the interior that rely on farming and livestock for sustenance. One thing that remains relatively clear across East Africa is the influence of Indian cuisine, with its heavy use of spices and curries.

Certain staple foods are common across East Africa, although they are usually accompanied by regional specialties. *Wali* (rice) is very common and is used in *pilau* (rice mixed with beef or vegetables, and flavored with various aromatic species) and *biryani* (rice made with traditional Swahili or Indian spices and prepared with chicken). Another common food is *chapati*, an unleavened flat bread with Indian origins that is eaten throughout East Africa and the Arabian Peninsula. *Matoke* (green bananas) is a staple food in Uganda and in the Kisii region in Kenya, while *ugali* (corn mash) is a staple for the Luhya community in Kenya.

While deep frying has long been a common practice in preparing foods like *mandazi* (a type of a doughnut) and *sambusa* (a triangular pastry with a savory filling that includes spiced potatoes, onions, beef, peas and other vegetables), the increased number of fast-food chains and westernization has greatly increased the frequency with which East Africans eat fried foods. This has led to new recipes for preparing traditional East African foods like transforming boiled arrowroot into crunchy chips or boiled sweet potatoes into sweet potato fries.



Expectations for dining in a restaurant are largely the same as any other part of the world, but with a few important distinctions for those from the United States. Wait staff are generally courteous but are focused on efficiency and may not check in on you during the meal unless requested. It is common at a sit-down restaurant for a customer to order all their food at once rather than ordering drinks while looking at the menu and then considering dessert at the end of the meal. Unlike the practice in many casual U.S. restaurants, there is no expectation that you will clear your table or dispose of your trash before you leave. Another major difference between East African restaurants and those in the U.S. is the practice of tipping your server; tipping is in

no way expected and may create confusion for the restaurant staff as to why only the server is being tipped and not the kitchen or other staff.

Food delivery is generally limited to high-volume chain restaurants in larger cities and is handled by services like Bolt Food, Uber Food, or regional services like Jumia. Deliveries are generally by motorcycle rather than by car as it is cheaper and much faster to navigate through traffic. Deliveries are often paid using MPESA on the phone rather than through credit cards or cash upon delivery, so payment is made in advance and, again, tipping is not expected.

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. What are some staple foods or dishes that are eaten in your community and/or region? Do these staples vary from what you grew up eating?
2. What are the cultural or international influences on the foods eaten in your region? Why are these international cuisines present or influential in your region?
3. Do you prefer to cook the majority of your meals, or do you prefer food from restaurants? If you were living in East Africa, would your answer change?
4. Compare and contrast the etiquette in restaurants where you live with that of East Africa. Which system or type of restaurant do you prefer and why?

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

ajabu amazing
bure free; free of charge
-ema pleasant; kind
-embamba thin
-hali ya juu high quality
-kali bitter
maalum; spesheli special
muafaka appropriate
nusu half
nzima full
-pana broad; wide
pole slow; sorry
robo quarter
-tamu delicious; sweet
tele plenty

Conjunctions

au; ama or
badala instead of
basi then; enough; well; that is all
bila without
ijapo even if
ila except
ili in order to; so that
ingawa although; even though
kisha and then; moreover
kwa for; to; by; with
lakini but
na and; with
pamoja na with; together with
pia also
tena again; moreover

Nouns

ada fee
agizo order
bamia okra
barabara; barabara kuu street; highway
barua letter
basi bus
bendi band
biringani; biringanya eggplant
borohoa; kihembe thick broth of cooked beans
brokoli broccoli
burudani fun; entertainment
chaguo choice
changu snapper

chapati Indian flat bread
chokoleti chocolate
duka la mikate bakery
dunia world; earth
faragha seclusion; privacy
gharama cost; charge
harufu smell
huduma service
isikirimu ice cream
jengo building
jua sun; sunshine
juu top
kabeji cabbage
kamba lobster; shrimp
kambare catfish
karambezi raspberry
keki cake
vibanzi french fries
kimanda toast
kiu thirst
kokteli cocktail
lita liter
maana meaning; sense
maji ya dafu coconut water
mahali place
malipo charge; payment
mandazi bun; buns
mara instance; time
meneja manager
mgando yoghurt
mhudumu server; waiter
mkahawa restaurant; cafe
mpishi chef
mpunga rice plant
mteja customer; client
muziki wa bluu Blues music
muziki wa klasiki classical music
mwenzi companion; friend
mwisho end
ngege tilapia
ngisi squid
ngoma drum; music
njugu groundnuts; peanuts
nusu half
pesa money
pweza octopus
risiti ya malipo payment receipt
sandwichi sandwich
sangara Nile perch
shida problem; trouble
shilingi shilling

shirika organization; corporation
spesheli special
steki steak
tambi spaghetti
tangawizi ginger root
uduvi shrimp
ujumbe message
utu personality
uyoga mushroom
virutubishi nutrients
vitafunio snacks

Verbs

-agiza to order
-amua to decide
-andaa; tayarisha to prepare
-burudika to be entertained
-chagua to choose
-fikia to arrive at
-fikiri to think
-finya to squeeze
-funga to close
-fungua to open; to unlock
-funika to cover
-haribika to spoil
-hudumia to serve; to assist
-kata kiu yako to quench your thirst
-kusikia; hisi kiu to be thirsty
-kuwa na kiu to be thirsty
-kuwa na utu to be personable
-leta to bring
-lipa to pay
-mimina to pour
-nyunyiza to sprinkle
-ondoa to remove
-ongeza to add
-oza to rot
-pokea to receive
-ponda to crush; to pound; to mash
-potea to get lost; to be lost
-subiri to wait for
-tarajia to hope; to expect
-tazamia to look forward to; to anticipate
-toa huduma to serve; to provide service
-tulia to relax; to quiet down
-tuma to send
-wahi to venture; to undertake
-weka to keep; to put

Key Phrases

Asante kwa kunialika. Thank you for inviting me.

Chakula hiki hakijaiva vizuri. The food is not well cooked.

Chakula hiki kimeungua. This food is burnt.

Chakula hiki kina chumvi nyingi. This food is too salty.

Chakula kiko tayari. The food is ready.

Chakula kitakuwa tayari baada ya muda gani? How long will it take for the food to be ready?

Hakuna samaki leo. There is no fish today.

Hamna shida. No problem.

Idadi gani...? What amount...?

Je, kuna samaki leo? Is there fish today?

Kiasi gani? How much?

Mgependa kulipa kibinafsi au kwa jumla? Would you like to pay individually or as a group?

Muda gani? How long?

kwa njia gani? in what/which way

Samahani. Sorry.

Subirini kidogo. Wait a moment / a little.

Ungependa chakula chenye viungo au bila viungo? Would you like spicy food or non-spicy food?

Ungependa maji baridi au moto? Would you like hot/cold water?

Ungependa maji yenye barafu au bila barafu? Would you like water with ice or without ice?

wakati wa (kuagiza)... ordering time...

5.3 Kununua vyakula sokoni



Zoezi A

Below is an image of an open-air market in Arusha. Work with a classmate to name all the vegetables that you see.



Je, wewe unapenda mboga gani kati ya hizi na kwa nini? Taja majina ya mboga hizi?



sukumawiki



pilipili kali



kabeji



tango



biringani



dhania



brokoli



uyoga

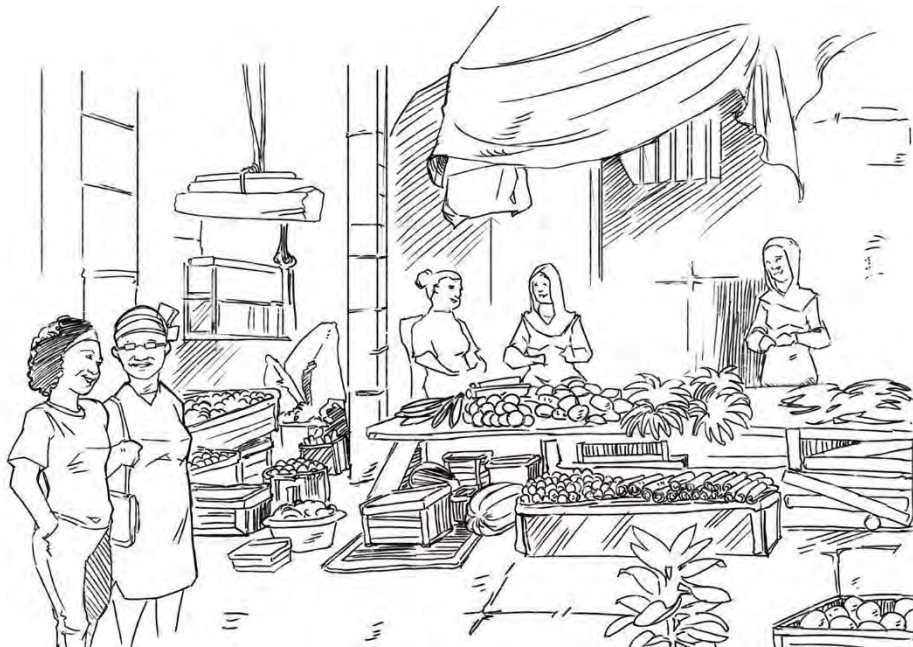


maharagwe



Zoezi B

Shamila and Farida go to an open-air market one afternoon to buy some fruits and vegetables. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Mwuzaji: Shikamoo Bibi Farida? Vipi Shamila? Habari za mchana?

Farida: Sisi hatujambo? Je, wewe waambaje? Habari za kazi?

Mwuzaji: Kazi inaendelea vizuri. Je, mngependa kununua nini leo?

Farida: Nimemsindikiza Shamila kuja sokoni kwa sababu angependa kununua matunda na mboga.

Mwuzaji: Shamila ungependa kununua matunda gani?

Shamila: Ningependa kununua maembe, machungwa, mananasi, matofaa na parachichi.

Mwuzaji: Leo tuna matunda mengi ambayo yametoka shambani. Kuna parachichi, maembe, machungwa, tikiti, matofaa, mananasi, ndimu, mapapai, nyanya na kadhalika. Je, ungependa matunda gani?

Shamila: Ningependa machungwa manne, maembe yaliyoiva matano na matofaa sita.

Mwuzaji: Sawa, nitakuuzia kwa bei nzuri sana. Nitakuuzia machungwa manne kwa shilingi elfu mbili. Machungwa haya ni matamu na yenye juisi nyingi. Nitakuuzia maembe makubwa matano kwa shilingi elfu tano. Maembe haya yana ladha nzuri sana. Nitakuuzia matofaa sita kwa shilingi elfu nane. Kwa jumla matunda yote yatakuwa shilingi elfu kumi na tano.

Shamila: Alaa! Unauza matofaa na maembe bei ghali sana. Tafadhali punguza bei, mimi ni mteja wako wa mara kwa mara.

Mwuzaji: Matunda haya ni matamu na yenye ladha kabisa. Yametoka shambani leo asubuhi. Kwa hivyo bei hiyo ni nzuri.

Shamila: Haiwezekani! Tafadhali, punguza bei kidogo. Nina shilingi elfu kumi pekee. Punguza shilingi elfu tano kutoka kwa bei ya jumla.

Mwuzaji: Nitakupunguzia na shilingi elfu mbili. Utalipa shilingi elfu kumi na tatu. Nitakuongeza chungwa hili.

Shamila: Asante. Hizi hapa pesa. Tafadhali niwekee matunda hayo ndani ya mkoba huu.

Mwuzaji: Asanteni na karibuni tena siku nyingine.

Shamila na Farida: Asante sana. Kwaheri ya kuonana.

1. Shamila angependa kununua matunda gani?
2. Shamila angependa kununua machungwa mangapi?
3. Shamila angependa kununua matofaa mangapi?
4. Mwuzaji alimwuzia Shamila matunda yote kwa bei gani?
5. Mwuzaji alimpunguzia Shamila shilingi ngapi?



Zoezi C

One evening Joseph's host mother asks him to stop by the market on his way home to buy some vegetables. Read the conversation between Joseph and the vendor and answer the questions that follow.



Mwuzaji: Karibu sana, kuna mboga nyingi ambazo tumepokea leo kutoka shambani.

Joseph: Asante mama. Habari za jioni?

Mwuzaji: Salama. Na wewe je?

Joseph: Niko salama. Ningependa kununua mboga.

Mwuzaji: Karibu sana, leo nina mboga aina mbali mbali ambazo ni nzuri sana na nimefunga vifungu vikubwa vikubwa. Je, ungependa kununua mboga gani?

Joseph: Ninataka sukumawiki vifungu viwili na pia vifungu viwili vya mchicha. Ningependa kilo moja ya vitunguu na kilo mbili za nyanya, pilipili hoho tatu na kitunguu saumu kimoja.

Mwuzaji: Vifungu viwili vya sukumawiki ni shilingi elfu moja, mchicha ni shilingi elfu mbili, kilo moja ya vitunguu ni shilingi elfu tatu. Nyanya kilo mbili ni shilingi elfu nne. Pilipili hoho moja ni shilingi mia tisa kwa hivyo tatu ni shilingi elfu mbili na mia saba na kitunguu saumu kimoja ni shilingi mia tano. Kwa jumla kila kitu ni shilingi elfu kumi na tatu na mia mbili.

Joseph: Alaa! Mbona unauza kitunguu saumu na nyanya bei ghali hivyo? Wiki jana nilinunua kitunguu saumu kimoja kwa shilingi mia moja na nyanya kilo moja ilikuwa shilingi elfu moja. Bei ya leo ni ghali sana!

Mwuzaji: Wiki hii bei ya bidhaa imeongezeka sana kwa sababu ya uhaba wa vyakula hivi. Mimi sipati faida yoyote.

Joseph: Tafadhali, punguza kidogo.

Mwuzaji: Kwa kweli bei hii ni nzuri. Kwa sababu wewe ni mteja wangu wa kawaida nitapunguza shilingi ishirini kutoka kwa bei ya jumla.

Joseph: Sawa, ninashukuru. Pesa ndizo hizi.

Mwuzaji: Asante. Nimeweka mboga zote ndani ya mkoba. Msalimie mama.

Joseph: Sawa nitamsalimu. Kwaheri.

Mwuzaji: Kwaheri.

1. Joseph anataka kununua mboga gani?
2. Kwa nini bei ya nyanya na kitunguu saumu iko juu wiki hii?
3. Mwuzaji amepunguza bei ya vitu kwa kiasi gani?
4. Wiki iliyopita Joseph alinunua nyanya na kitunguu saumu kwa bei gani?



Zoezi D

You have just arrived at Darajani market to buy fruits and vegetables for the evening meal. Hold a conversation with the seller. Indicate the type of fruits and vegetables you want as well as the quantity and quality. Make sure to bargain for a good deal!



Zoezi E

You are studying abroad in Kenya or Tanzania. One afternoon your host mother requests that you go to the market to buy a few fruits and vegetables for dinner. Role-play the conversation with a classmate. In your conversations, talk about the dishes you would like to prepare, the ingredients and quantity you need to buy, and ask for a recommendation on where to buy them.



Zoezi F

Explore a few sites of famous open-air food markets in East Africa. Search online for videos or documentaries of open-air markets. Write a blog post about the open-air markets in East Africa.



Zoezi G

Using your blog post as a starting point, prepare a detailed presentation with visuals about various open-air markets in East Africa. Be prepared to compare and contrast with similar markets in your hometown.



Zoezi H

Joseph is sent to the supermarket on Saturday morning to buy a few food items for lunch. While at the supermarket, he realizes that he forgot his shopping list. He calls his host mother, Fatuma, to ask for her list of items that he needs to buy. Listen to their phone call and answer the questions below.

1. Kwa nini Joseph anampigia Bibi Fatuma simu?
2. Bibi Fatuma alisema kuwa Joseph alihitaji kununua kiasi gani cha unga wa ngano, maziwa, na mafuta ya mboga?
3. Joseph anahitaji kununua viungo gani?
4. Kwa nini Joseph hatanunua matunda katika supamaketi?
5. Joseph atanunua vinywaji gani?



Zoezi I

You arrive home from the supermarket and realize that you accidentally forgot your shopping bag with your ingredients for lunch and the additional items you purchased. Call the supermarket to find out if they have seen your shopping bag at the stall. Provide clear details of the bag and the items in the bag. You and a classmate will need to take turns playing the vendor.



Zoezi J

After retrieving your grocery bag from the supermarket, you start preparing lunch and realize that the milk and meat you bought are not in good condition. Go to the supermarket's customer service desk to complain about the spoiled food items and request a refund for these two items.



Zoezi K

You are planning to go to the market on a market day to buy fresh produce and grains. Prepare five questions that you are likely to ask the vendors.



Zoezi L

Shamila goes to the store in town that specializes in cereals and grains to buy what her host family will need for the month. Look at the vocabulary below as you read her conversation with the vendor and then answer the questions that follow.



ndengu



njegere



maharagwe



mchele



ngano



mahindi



mtama



wimbi

Mwuzaji: Habari za jioni dada? Karibu nikuuzie nafaka mbalimbali. Leo nina nafaka nzuri.

Shamila: Salama. Kweli ninaona una nafaka nzuri sana.

Mwuzaji: Je, ungependa nikuuzie nafaka gani?

Shamila: Ningependa maharagwe haya ya manjano, njegere, mchele, na mahindi.

Mwuzaji: Kilo moja ya maharagwe ya manjano ni shilingi mia saba, kilo moja ya njegere ni shilingi mia tano na kilo moja ya mahindi mabichi ni shilingi mia mbili hamsini na mchele aina ya pishori ni shilingi mia tatu kwa kilo moja.

Shamila: Ala! Mbona unauza nafaka bei ghali hivyo. Wiki jana nilinunua nafaka hizi na hazikuwa ghali hivyo.

Mwuzaji: Bei yangu si ghali. Nafaka hizi ni bora sana. Ungependa kiasi gani ili nijue kama ninaweza kukupunguzia kutoka kwa bei ya jumla ya vitu vyote.

Shamila: Ningependa kilo mbili za maharagwe ya manjano, kilo mbili za Njegere, kilo nne za mahindi na mchele kilo nne.

Mwuzaji: Mchele kilo nne, kilo mbili za njegere, maharagwe ya manjano kilo mbili, na mahindi kilo nne kwa jumla zitakuwa shilingi elfu nne na mia sita. Nitakupunguzia shilingi mia mbili kwa kila kitu. Kwa hivyo utalipa shilingi elfu nne na mia nne.

Shamila: Ninashukuru ijapo nilitaka kulipa shilingi elfu nne kwa kila kitu.

Mwuzaji: Ukilipa shilingi elfu nne mimi sitapata faida yoyote. Bidhaa hizi ni safi sana na ni za hali ya juu. Ninajua utazifurahia.

Shamila: Je, utaniongeza kitu chochote?

Mwuzaji: Bila shaka nitakuongeza glasi moja ya mchele na pia njegere kidogo. Wacha nikupimie nafaka zako.

Shamila: Asante sana. Pesa ndizo hizi.

Mwuzaji: Asante. Karibu tena wakati mwingine.

1. Shamila alienda sokoni kununua nafaka gani?
2. Shamila alinunua kiasi gani cha kila nafaka?
3. Mwuzaji alimpunguzia bei ya jumla kwa shilingi ngapi?
4. Mwuzaji alimuongeza Shamila aina gani ya nafaka?



Zoezi M

Joseph and Shamila discuss their spice preferences among things they have tried in Tanzania. Listen to their conversation and indicate whether the statements below are true or false.



dalasini



pilipili



jira



tangawizi



kukumanga



karafuu



zafarani



manjano

1. Shamila hapendi chai ya maziwa na pia hatumii sukari.
2. Shamila hapendi pilau.
3. Joseph anapenda sana nyama iliyookwa.
4. Shamila anapenda chakula chenye pilipili kali.
5. Joseph hapendi chakula chenye pilipili kali.



Zoezi N

Joseph and Matata stop by the butcher's shop one evening on their way home from class. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Matata: Habari za jioni?

Mwuzaji: Nzuri sana. Karibu Matata. Ugependa kununua nyama gani leo?

Matata: Je, mna nyama gani leo?

Mwuzaji: Tuna aina mbali mbali za nyama. Kuna nyama ya ng'ombe, nyama ya nguruwe, nyama ya mbuzi, samaki, na pia nyama ya kuku.

Matata: Ningependa kilo moja ya nyama ya nguruwe.

Mwuzaji: Sawa nitakukatia nyama nzuri ambayo haina mifupa na mafuta mengi.

Matata: Tafadhali uikatekate nyama hiyo kwa vipande vidogo. Ni pesa ngapi?

Mwuzaji: Kilo moja ya nyama ya nguruwe ni shilingi mia tano. Je, na wewe ungependa nyama yoyote?

Joseph: Mimi ningependa kilo moja na nusu ya nyama ya mbuzi.

Mwuzaji: Tuna nyama ya mbuzi iliyochinjwa leo. Kilo moja ni shilingi mia sita.

Joseph: Sawa. Tafadhali, uikatekate nyama hiyo kwa vipande vidogo. Itakuwa rahisi kuandaa nikifika nyumbani.

Mwuzaji: Sawa. Subirini kidogo.

1. Kuna aina gani ya nyama katika duka hili la nyama?
2. Matata alinunua aina gani ya nyama?
3. Joseph alinunua aina gani ya nyama?
4. Joseph alinunua kiasi gani cha nyama?
5. Joseph, alilipa pesa ngapi kwa nyama aliyoinunua?
6. Kwa nini Joseph alitaka Mwuzaji aikatekate nyama yake kwa vipande vidogo?
7. Wewe unapenda kula nyama ya aina gani?
8. Wewe hununua nyama yako wapi?
9. Je, mwuzaji hukuandalia vipi nyama unaponunua?



Zoezi O

You and a group of Kiswahili classmates would like to work together to prepare the Swahili dish pictured on the right. Make a shopping list of the food items you need to buy to prepare this meal for five people.



Zoezi P

In groups of three, role-play a scene in an open-air market where you need to purchase all the items needed to prepare the Swahili dish above and include a few additional items you would like to purchase.

Sarufi: Ngeli ya JI-MA (*JI-MA noun class*)

Unlike nouns in the noun classes that have been discussed thus far, nouns in the JI-MA class do not have a specific prefix for their singular forms. However, all nouns in this class take *ma-* as their prefix in the plural form. The JI-MA class contains a variety of noun categories including:

- manufactured products (cars, blankets, etc.)
- natural or constructed places (lakes, bridges, markets, etc.)
- abstract or concrete concepts
- parts of the body
- fruits and other natural objects
- things that cannot be counted (water, oil, milk, etc.)
- augmentatives
- Nouns that do not change in plural and singular forms. In sentence formation, they take *li-* in both singular and plural forms.

When a JI-MA noun is the subject of the sentence, agreement must be made between the subject and the verb. This noun class uses *li-* as the verbal prefix when the subject is singular and *ya-* in plural for sentence formation.

Tunda hili **limeiva**.
Matunda haya **yameiva**.

Jicho **linauma**.
Macho **yanauma**.

*This **fruit** has gotten ripe.*
*These **fruits** have gotten ripe.*

*The **eye** is hurting.*
*The **eyes** are hurting.*

Jani **lime**kauka.
 Majani **yame**kauka.
 Tofaa **liliku**wa baya.
 Matofaa **yaliku**wa mabaya.

The **leaf** has dried.
 The **leaves** have dried.
 The **apple** had gone bad.
 The **apples** had gone bad.

Note in the second set of sentences that the adjective *baya* has prefixes that agree with the noun (*ma*)*tofaa*.

As noted earlier, there are several uncountable nouns that fall in this class, and they exist only in the plural form in Kiswahili. These include *maji* (water), *mafuta* (oil), *maziwa* (milk).

Maji **yamem**wagika.
 Maziwa **yameg**anda.
 Mafuta **yamef**ika.

The **water** has been poured.
 The **milk** has gone bad.
 The **oil** has arrived.



Zoezi Q

Write the plural forms of the following fruits.



chungwa



embe



limau



nanasi



parachichi



tikiti



zabibu



nyanya



stroberi



zeituni



tende



tofaa



Zoezi R

Change the following sentences into plural forms.

1. Mama amenunua limau chache.
2. Nanasi kutoka kwa mwuzaji huyo huwa na ladha chungu.
3. Hindi hili limeungua.
4. Embe la mtoto limeanguka sakafuni.
5. Chungwa ambalo nilinunua leo asubuhi lilikuwa limeoza.
6. Jiko lake ni bei ghali sana.
7. Duka la nafaka liko katika sehemu ya mwisho ya soko.
8. Nilikunywa maji ya dafu kwa mara ya kwanza mjini Mombasa.
9. Tofaa litaiva hivi karibuni.
10. Papai lilianguka.



Zoezi S

Watch one of the videos below and write a brief summary (one to two paragraphs) in Kiswahili, including a discussion of the food options that are shown. Be prepared to share your summary with the class.



Zanzibar: Spices, Slaves and the Spirit of Independence



Spent 24 Hours in Stonetown, Zanzibar | Street Food



The Best Zanzibar Street Food at Forodhani



tinyurl.com/afxm4ayw



tinyurl.com/yj9uw6ny



tinyurl.com/2d4rm7es



Zoezi T

During a weekend visit to Stone Town Zanzibar, Shamila and Joseph buy some food from the vendors. Read their conversation with the food vendors and answer the questions that follow.

Mwuzaji: Hamjambo? Ninatumai mko salama. Karibuni sana kwa kibanda chetu! Tuna vyakula vizuri na vitamu sana.

Shamila: Asante sana. Vyakula vinapendeza sana.

Mwuzaji: Hapa tuna mishikaki, mayai ya kuchemshwa na kachumbari, bhajia, mutura, mahindi ya kuchoma, vibanzi na sambusa. Je, mngenda kujaribu vyakula gani?

Shamila: Mimi ningependa kuonja kwanza kabla nifanye maamuzi kwa sababu sijawahi kula vyakula hivi.

Mwuzaji: Unaweza kuonja bila shaka. Ungenda kuonja vyakula gani?

Shamila: Ningependa kuonja mishikaki na bhajia. Joseph wewe unenda kuonja vyakula vyovyote?

Joseph: Mimi ningependa kujaribu mutura na kachumbari.

Mwuzaji: Sawa nitawapa vipande vidogo muonje.

Shamila: Mshikaki huu ni mtamu sana. Pia ninapenda ladha ya bhajia. Joseph chakula chako kikoje?

Joseph: Ninapenda sana ladha ya mutura. Lakini ningependa kuongeza pilipili kidogo. Mimi hupenda pilipili kali.

Mwuzaji: Nina furaha kuwa mnavipenda vyakula hivi. Je niwauzie kiasi gani?

Shamila: Mimi ningependa mishikaki mmoja na bhajia sahani moja.

Joseph: Je, unapimaje mutura?

Mwuzaji: Vipande ni bei tofauti. Kuna kipande cha shilingi elfu moja, elfu mbili au elfu nne mia mbili hamsini. Ukipenda pia ninaweza kupima kwa kilo.

Joseph: Nikatie kipande cha shilingi mia mbili hamsini. Unipe kachumbari na vipande vya pilipili kali.

Mwuzaji: Sawa. Karibuni mkae na mfurahie vyakula vyenu. Dada utalipa jumla ya shilingi elfu sita bhajia sahani moja na mishikaki. Mngenda vinywaji vyovyote?

Shamila: Mimi ningependa soda baridi ya Fanta.

Joseph: Mimi nipe soda baridi ya Coke.

1. Shamila na Joseph waliagiza vinywaji gani?
2. Shamila na Joseph waliagiza vyakula gani kutoka kwa kibanda cha barabarani?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph walivionja vyakula kabla ya kuvinunua?
4. Shamila na Joseph walilipa jumla ya pesa ngapi kwa vyakula vyao?
5. Je, ushakula vyakula vya barabarani? Eleza kwa nini.



A friend in your hometown would like to know more about food buying habits in East Africa compared to your hometown. For example, how often groceries are purchased, where groceries are purchased, whether one is able to haggle for prices, and what types of foods are available at the market or grocery store. Create a presentation with pictures to compare and contrast the cultural norms surrounding food buying.

Cultural Explorations

It is common in East Africa to find open-air markets with vendors selling a wide variety of goods and services. These might range from fresh produce, grains, and meat (butchered and alive) to shoes, clothes, and other accessories, and even services like bicycle repair, shoe repair, and tailoring. In urban areas, the markets are typically open daily and are a source of livelihood for many people in the *jua-kali* sector (skilled/informal trades) and other small businesses. In rural areas, markets are only open on specific days, and vendors travel around their region to sell goods and services at different markets each day.

Most open-air markets are organized and run by local governments. Sometimes they will provide special buildings and stalls for the vendors, but markets may also be set up along busy roads or areas with high foot-traffic. The city council and municipalities are also responsible for collecting fees and for overseeing the general maintenance, cleanliness, and security of the markets. The most famous and historical open-air markets in East Africa are the Kariakoo Market in Dar es Salaam, the Gikomba Market in Nairobi, and the Darajani Market in Zanzibar.

Many people go to the market each day to shop for vegetables, meat, fish, or other perishable items. They may supplement those purchases with trips to a local store or supermarket, but that is often for the sake of convenience as the food in the markets is generally fresher and cheaper. Supermarket purchases are generally focused on non-perishable commercial products, although there is a growing reliance on grocery stores for all food purchases, especially in more affluent communities.



Bargain shopping and haggling over prices is a common and expected practice at open-air markets. It is normal for a seller to price goods for more than they are worth with an expectation that the customer will attempt to negotiate that price down; a skillful customer may negotiate down to the minimum price the seller is willing to accept, while a less skillful customer helps to boost the seller's profits. It is also common for buyers to ask for some small additional items to balance out or sweeten a deal. For example, if one buys two kilograms of tomatoes, one might ask the seller to throw in a small amount of cilantro or an onion.

Haggling is not generally expected over commercially produced products like soap or tea that the seller has purchased and for which there are clear costs that have to be recouped. For much the same reason, haggling is not an accepted practice in convenience stores and supermarkets where all items are sold with set prices.



With the expansion of many towns and cities, and urbanization in general, there is an increase in the number of new malls and shopping centers. In the malls, the stalls are partitioned and owned by different people who sell a variety of goods and services. In most malls, particularly those that are not in high-end places, the commodities do not have fixed prices, and customers are able to negotiate for prices. There is a general trend to move to cashless transactions given the challenges presented by the rise in insecurity. Most transactions between buyers and sellers are through mobile money platforms.

One such mobile money platform popular in East Africa is M-Pesa – M for mobile and *Pesa* for the Kiswahili word for money. M-Pesa was launched in Kenya in 2007 as a mobile-based money transfer and micro-financing service and has expanded and is now being used widely in East Africa. M-Pesa users can deposit, withdraw, transfer

money, access credit and savings accounts, and pay for goods and services using their mobile devices, even non-smartphones! It is typical for people to pay for goods and services using mobile money options rather than debit or credit cards.

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. Are there open-air markets where you live? What goods and services are sold there, and how often are the markets open? Who oversees the market schedule and vendors? How does this compare with what you have read about open-air markets in East Africa?
2. Think about where you purchase the majority of your food and goods – at an open-air market, local grocery store, supermarket chain, online...? What drives your decision to purchase your products this way?
3. Consider the practice of haggling – what skills are needed in order to be successful in bargaining for a better price? Is this something that you have done recently or have had the opportunity to do in the past? If this is not a common practice in your culture or region, why is that the case? Or, if it is, what makes haggling an option? Based on the reading above and what you already know of East African culture, why is haggling and bargaining for a good price part of market culture?
4. What payment options are available in your culture or region that are similar to M-Pesa? Are these options available to all or to a select few? In what situations would you use mobile money services like this?

Key Vocabulary

Nouns

balungi	grapefruit
bamia	okra
bhajia	deep fried potato slices that have been dipped in egg wash and flour
bidhaa	merchandise; goods
biringani/biringanya	eggplant
bizari/binzari	curry powder
brokoli	broccoli
chenji	change
chenza	tangerine
choroko	green grams
chungwa	orange
dalasini	cinnamon
debe	a large container used to measure flour and grains in the market
embe	mango
faida	profit; benefit
fidia	compensation/fine
fenesi	jack fruit
galoni	gallon
gramu	gram
haradali nyeupe	white mustard
haradali nyeusi	black mustard
hasara	loss
hira	cumin
hundi	bundle
iliki	cardamom
jua-kali	skilled trades; informal trades
karafuu	clove
karoti	carrot
kiasi	quantity; a small amount
kibaba	half liter (used mainly with flour and grain)
kibanda	stall; cabin
kifungu	bunch; cluster
kilo	kilogram
kisamvu	cassava leaves
kitakasa	sanitizer
lita	liter
mafuta ya kupika	cooking oil
maini	liver
majani chai	tea leaves
mali	wealth
malipo	payment
manjano	turmeric
matunda ya karakara	passion fruit
maweke	millet
mfupa	bone
mgogwe	tree tomato
mkoba	bag; sack

mnunuzi buyer
mtama sorghum; milo
muwa sugarcane
mwuzaji seller
nanasi pineapple
nazi coconut
ndimu lime
njegere peas
noti note
nusu half
orodha list
painti pint
papai papaya; pawpaw fruit
parachichi; ovakado avocado
paundi; ratili pound
pera guava
pesa; fedha; hela money
piga bei bargain
pilipili pepper/chili
pilipili iliyosagwa ground pepper
pilipili hoho red pepper
 ... **manga** black pepper
 ... **saumu** garlic pepper
 ... **kijani** green pepper
 ... **manjano** yellow pepper
 ... **nyekundu** red pepper
 ... **chungwa** orange pepper
 ... **nyeupe** white pepper
 ... **zilizokaushwa** dried pepper
pilipili kichaa/kali hot pepper
pishi two liters (used mainly with flour and grain)
robo a quarter
sabuni ya mikono hand soap
sakafu floor
sarafu coins
saumu; kitunguu saumu garlic; garlic clove
senti sent
napkin table napkins
shilingi shilling
stroberi strawberry
sumuni; thumuni fifty cents
tofaa apple
tomoko custard apple
udaha cayenne pepper
ukosefu; uhaba lack of; scarcity
ukwaju tamarind
uwatu fenugreek
uzani/uzito weight
vipimo quantity
viungo spices
zafarani saffron

zambarau plums
zeituni olives

Verbs

-anza to start
-anguka to fall; to drop
-badilisha to change; to alter
-funga to tie; to fasten
-fungua to untie; to loosen
-isha; malizika to get finished
-jumulisha to total
-leta to to bring
-mwaga to pour out; to spill
-nuka to smell
-nukia to have a nice smell
-ondoa to remove
-ongeza to add
-onja to taste
-oza to rot
-panga to arrange
-patikana to be found
-piga bei to bargain
-pima to measure
-punguza/shusha to decrease; to reduce
-rudisha to return
-sahau to forget
-salimu to greet
-shukuru to thank
-sikizana; kubaliana to agree
-sindikiza to escort; to guide

Key Phrases

Bei gani? What is the price?
Bei ghali! Expensive price!
Bei nafuu. Affordable price.
Bei rahisi! Cheap price!
Bei ya jumla ni gani? What is the total price?
Bei ya wastani Fair or average price.
Haiwezekani! Not possible!; It is impossible!
Kuna ukosefu wa karoti. There is scarcity of carrots.
kwa bahati mbaya unfortunately; by bad luck
Leo sina nafaka nyingi. I do not have a lot of grains today.
Leo, kuna aina mbalimbali ya matunda na mboga. Today, there are a variety of fruits and vegetables.
Mchicha haupatikani kwa urahisi siku hizi. Spinach is not easily available these days.
Nina matunda mbichi leo. I have fresh fruits.
Njugu zimeisha. We are out of peanuts (*lit: The peanuts are finished.*)
Tafadhali punguza bei kidogo. Please lower the price a little.
Una bidhaa gani leo? What goods do you have today?
Una mboga gani leo? What vegetables do you have today?

5.4 Kuandaa vyakula



Zoezi A

Shamila walks into the kitchen and finds Farida making breakfast. She greets Farida, and they talk about the various foods that she is preparing. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Habari za asubuhi Bibi Farida?

Farida: Salama. Umeamkaje?

Shamila: Nimeamka vizuri. Ninatumai pia wewe ulilala vizuri.

Farida: Nililala vizuri.

Shamila: Je, unaandaa nini? Ninaweza kukusaidia?

Farida: Ninaandaa kiamshakinywa. Ninapika chai, mayai, na mandazi. Nimemaliza kuandaa mandazi. Unaweza kupika chai.

Shamila: Chai hupikwa vipi?

Farida: Weka sufuria kwenye jiko. Mwaga maziwa nusu lita na uyaache yachemke. Maziwa yakishachemka, ongeza maji nusu lita na uyaache yaendeleo kuchemka. Kisha, ongeza majani chai nusu ya kijiko na nusu ya kijiko cha masala. Subiri kwa dakika chache ili chai ichemke. Chai ikishachemka ichunge na uiweke kwenye birika au bili.

Shamila: Sawa mama nimeelewa hatua za kutengeneza chai. Je, niweke sukari kidogo kabla ya kuchunga?

Farida: Hapana. Usiweke sukari. Juma hatumii sukari. Sisi tutaweka sukari mezani.

Shamila: Sawa. Chai itakuwa tayari hivi punde.

1. Bibi Farida anaandaa vyakula gani kwa chakula cha asubuhi?
2. Bibi Farida amemaliza kuandaa vyakula gani?
3. Shamila atafuata hatua gani za kupika chai?
4. Je, Shamila ataongeza sukari kwa chai?
5. Wewe hupika nini kwa chakula cha asubuhi?



Zoezi B

Joseph offers to help his host mother to prepare the dinner meal. He talks with her about how to make *sukumawiki*. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Joseph: Mama, vipi? Unahitaji msaada wowote kuandaa chakula cha jioni?

Mama: Ndiyo, unaweza kutengeneza sukumawiki. Mimi nitapika ugali.

Joseph: Je, sukumawiki hutengenezwaje?

Mama: Kwanza, fungua kitita cha mboga kisha zitie kwenye sinki na uoshe kila tawi kwa utaratibu. Baada ya kuosha, katakata mboga kwa vipande vidogo. Tumia ubao wa kukata. Pia katakata kitunguu kimoja na nyanya mbili.

Joseph: Je, baada ya kuzikata mboga, nitazipikaje?

Mama: Weka sufuria safi kwenye jiko na uwashe moto. Sufuria ikishakuwa moto weka mafuta vijiko vinne. Mafuta yakishachemka, weka vitunguu kisha ukoroge. Vitunguu vikibadilika rangi na kuwa kahawia, ongeza nyanya kisha ukoroge. Nyanya zikishaiva ongeza mboga na uchanganye. Pika mboga kwa muda wa dakika tano. Ongeza chumvi kidogo na viungo.

Joseph: Sawa mama. Wacha nijaribu. Je, ukitaka kupika ugali unafuata hatua gani?

Mama: Ili kupika ugali unahitaji kuchemsha maji ninavyofanya sasa. Maji yakishachemka na kutokota, unahitaji kuongeza unga kidogo kidogo na kuukoroga. Baadaye, unahitaji kuusonga ugali kwa utaratibu na kuhakikisha kuwa unga unachanganyika vizuri na maji. Unahitaji kuendelea kuusonga ugali hadi uwe laini.

Joseph: Utajuaje ugali umeiva vizuri?

Mama: Baada ya kuusonga ugali kwa muda wa takriban dakika kumi unahitaji kuhakikisha kuwa hakuna unga mkavu kwenye ugali na kuwa uko laini. Unaweza kuuonja. Ukishaiva unaupakua na kuuweka kwenye sahani.

Joseph: Hatua rahisi. Nitajaribu kuupika ugali siku nyingine.

1. Hatua nne muhimu za kupika sukumawiki ni gani?
2. Kabla ya kuanza kupika sukumawiki unahitaji kufanya nini?
3. Unahitaji vitu gani kupika sukumawiki na ugali?
4. Hatua tatu muhimu za kupika ugali ni gani?
5. Wewe hupikaje mboga?



Zoezi C

You have already learned various verbs that relate to food preparation. Label the pictures that you can using the *-ku* infinitive form. Your teacher will help to fill in the verbs that you do not recognize.





















Pre-reading Activity

Work with a classmate to review what you know about how East Africans prepare their food. What kinds of ingredients do they tend to use? Are there particular cooking methods that they appear to use more often? Provide specific examples.

Reading a Recipe

Below you will find a recipe for *pilau*, a very common dish in East Africa. Read through the list of ingredients with a classmate and then proceed to the instructions on how to make the dish.

Viungo

- nusu kilo mchele aina ya pishori
- nusu kilo nyama ya ng'ombe
- mafuta ya kupikia
- chumvi
- kikombe kimoja cha njegere
- viazi mbatata vinne
- zabibu kavu kiasi upendacho
- vitunguu maji vikubwa vitatu
- karoti mbili kubwa
- nyanya mbili kubwa
- kijiko kimoja cha mdalasini uliosagwa
- kijiko kimoja kidogo cha pilipili manga
- kijiko kimoja cha bizari
- tangawizi iliyosagwa vijiko viwili

Jinsi ya kuandaa

1. Katakata nyama ya ng'ombe kwa vipande vidogo.
2. Menya tangawizi, kisha uitie kwenye kinu na upondeponde.
3. Chambua na uoshe mchele kwa maji mengi kisha uuweke kando.
4. Menya viazi kisha uvikate katika vipande vidogo vidogo.
5. Katakata vitunguu maji pamoja na pilipili ya kijani.
6. Osha nyanya na karoti na uzikate katika vipande vidogo vidogo na uziweke kando tayari kwa kupika.
7. Osha njegere zako ziwe tayari.
8. Katika sufuria safi, tia vipande vya nyama ya ng'ombe pamoja na viungo ulivyovitwanga, ongeza maji kiasi, weka kwenye moto na uviache vichemke.
9. Ikiwa ni nyama ya ng'ombe iliyo laini, ichemshe kwa dakika tano kisha uiache na supu yake.
10. Iwapo ni nyama ya ng'ombe isiyo laini, ichemshe hadi itakapoiva kisha uiache na supu yake.

11. Kwenye sufuria safi mimina mafuta ya kupikia kisha uyaweke kwenye moto na usubiri yawe moto.
12. Kaanga vitunguu hadi vigeuke rangi ya kahawia.
13. Tia pilipili ya kijani, koroga na kisha uongeze karoti, nyanya na uukoroge mchanganyiko wako vyema.
14. Ongeza viazi na usubiri vikaangike kidogo.
15. Weka mchanganyiko wa vitunguu saumu na vitunguu maji ulivyovitwanga kwenye mchanganyiko wako.
16. Ongeza viungo vya pilau vilivyosagwa kwenye mchanganyiko huo kisha uweke viungo vya pilau vizima ulivyokuwa umelowesha.
17. Ongeza njegere na ukoroge vyema, kisha uimimine nyama ya ng'ombe na supu yake kwenye mchanganyiko huo.
18. Ongeza maji kiasi ili yaendane na kiasi cha mchele kisha uweke punje za zabibu kavu.
19. Hakikisha mchanganyiko wako una kiasi cha chumvi unachokipenda ikiwa ni kidogo ongeza.
20. Subiri vichemke kisha ongeza mchele kwenye mchanganyiko huo, koroga kiasi na ufunike.
21. Iwapo unatumia gesi kupika, tumia moto wa wastani ili pilau yako isije ikaungua.
22. Maji yakishakauka funua, changanya pilau yako vizuri kisha uifunike tena.
23. Subiri kwa dakika tano na kisha ufunue kuangalia kama wali wako umeiva.
24. Wali ukiwa umeiva basi pishi lako la pilau litakuwa tayari kwa kuliwa.
25. Pakua na ufurahie kuila pilau yako!

Describing a Dish

It is common to be asked to describe a dish to someone who may be unfamiliar with it. Working with the same classmate, come up with two to three sentences that describe what *pilau* is. What is in it? How is it prepared? Be prepared to share your sentences with the class to see who has the best description. Your teacher may ask you to submit a written description that incorporates good ideas from other groups.

Sarufi: Amri (*Imperatives*)

Imperatives are used to give commands and polite requests. You have been hearing and seeing imperatives since the beginning of your study of Kiswahili.

Tafadhali nyamaza!
Fungueni vitabu!
Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

Please **be quiet**!
Open your books!
Answer the following questions.

In Kiswahili regular verbs and borrowed verbs have different imperatives. In most cases, regular verbs end in *-a*, like “*Fanya!*,” “*Ngoja!*,” and “*Andika!*” when indicating a single recipient. When forming imperatives with regular verbs, the form doesn’t change when you are indicating a single recipient, but commands directed at multiple people will take the *-eni* suffix, which is added after removing the final vowel *-a*.

u moja	wingi
Soma!	Someni!
Pika!	Pikeni!
Ongeza!	Ongezeni!

In the case of borrowed verbs, which in most cases do not end with *-a*, add the suffix *-ni* to the verb in the plural form.

u moja	wingi
Karibu!	Karibuni!
Njoo!	Njooni!
Jaribu!	Jaribuni!



Zoezi E

Now that you know how infinitives are formed, go back to the recipe in *Zoezi D* and circle all the imperatives that you can find.



Zoezi F

You are planning a surprise party for a classmate and would like your other classmates to help with the party (cleaning up, preparation of dishes, inviting and attending to guests, etc.). Write a group email explaining the party (when, where, why) and ask them to perform certain tasks. Use the imperative to assign tasks.

Example:

John na Maria, tafadhali safisheni nyumba.



Zoezi G

Prepare a written recipe for one of your favorite dishes using the recipe in *Zoezi D* as a model. You might include pictures to help your readers visualize the dish.



Zoezi H

Share your favorite recipe (above) in class and be ready to respond to your classmates' questions.



Zoezi I

You are on a homestay visit with a Kenyan family and want to share something about food in your own culture. Write out a detailed description, including the steps to prepare the dish as well as any cultural significance the dish might have.

Sarufi: Mnyambuliko wa vitenzi (*Passive voice*)

As in English, Kiswahili uses active and passive voice. In the active voice, the subject of the sentence performs the action of the verb. In the passive voice, the subject of the sentence receives the action of the verb. Look at these two examples:

Mama yangu alikipika chakula cha asubuhi.
My mother cooked breakfast.

Chakula cha asubuhi **kilipikwa** na mama.
*Breakfast **was cooked** by my mother.*

The first sentence is in the active voice, with the *mother* performing the action of cooking breakfast. The second sentence is in passive voice with *breakfast* as the grammatical subject of the sentence but receiving the action of being cooked. Note that in the passive voice the person performing the action (*mama*) is shifted to a position following the verb and is preceded by the preposition *na*, which is equivalent to the English word *by* in this context.

The passive voice is useful when you want to emphasize an action but have less interest in (or knowledge of) who performed the action.

Kiswahili **kinasemwa** nchini Tanzania na Kenya.
*Kiswahili **is spoken** in Tanzania and Kenya.*

Nitaolewa mwaka ujao.
***I will be getting married** next year.*

Tarakilishi yangu **iliibiwa**.
*My laptop **was stolen**.*

Viatu **vilipigwa** rangi jana.
*The shoes **were polished** yesterday.*

The passive voice forms of verbs are constructed by adding the prefix *-w-*, *-liw-*, or *-lew-* depending on the ending of the verb stem.

Verb stem	Active	Passive
ends in a consonant	pika chemsha sema	pikwa chemshwa semwa
ends in <i>a</i> , <i>i</i> , or <i>u</i>	andaa kimbia nunua	andaliwa kimbiliwa nunuliwa
ends in <i>o</i> or <i>e</i>	oa ondoa pokea	olewa ondolewa pokelewa



Zoezi J

Change the following active voice sentences to passive voice.

Example:

Mama anafua nguo. → Nguo zinafuliwa na mama.

1. Watoto wanalima shamba.
2. Wanafunzi wanatoa vitabu ndani ya maktaba.
3. Juma alinunua vyakula kutoka soko la Darajani.
4. Aisha alifua nguo za binti yake jana asubuhi.
5. Fundi alitengeneza baisikeli ya Juma.
6. Juma alifungua mlango na kuweka kifunguo chini ya mlango.
7. Mwuzaji aliuza nyama ambayo ilikuwa imeharibika.
8. Kaka yangu alilishona shati hili.
9. Juma alioa Maria.
10. Wanafunzi walimtembelea mwalimu.



Zoezi K

You had dinner at a friend's house last night, and your classmate has asked you to describe what you ate. Use the passive voice to describe how the food was prepared (chopped, boiled, fried, etc.). Be prepared to answer any questions your classmate might have.



Zoezi L

Listen to the following recording from a food channel about East African Cuisine and answer the questions that follow.

1. Mtangazaji anaandaa chakula gani?
2. Mpishi anahitaji viungo gani ili kuandaa chakula hiki?
3. Hatua ya kwanza ya kuandaa chakula hiki ni gani?
4. Hatua ya pili ya kuandaa chakula hiki ni gani?
5. Hatua ya mwisho ya kuandaa chakula hiki ni gani?

Cultural Explorations

While both Kenya and Tanzania are majority Christian countries, both have sizable Muslim populations. The introduction of Islam grew out of trade with the Middle East and India that started around the ninth century. Those relationships led to cultural cross-fertilization as the new arrivals assimilated and those among the local population converted to Islam. Approximately 11% of Kenya's population and approximately a third of Tanzania's population are Muslim, with the majority still living along the Swahili coast where the early Indian Ocean trade was concentrated. The population of Zanzibar, for example, is almost exclusively Muslim.



Your Seal of Assurance

This trade brought an obvious influence on foodways in the region, including a heavy reliance on aromatic spices mentioned earlier in this unit. Muslims in East Africa, like Muslims around the world, also have specific religious beliefs that inform their approach to food. Islam prescribes a set of dietary laws that its believers must follow, making a distinction between food that is allowed (*halal*) and food that is forbidden (*haram*). There are strict prohibitions against the consumption of pork and alcohol, but most other food is permitted as long as its production is in accordance with Islamic law. This is most important with regard to the consumption of meat, which

must be from animals that are herbivorous. Animals used for food must be raised in a clean and healthy environment and treated with respect during their lives and also during slaughter to be considered *halal*; the slaughter of animals is a prescribed practice that includes the recitation of a prayer that recognizes the animal as a valuable gift from Allah. Food that is *halal*, including manufactured goods that often include additives, is usually labeled as such so that Muslims can avoid inadvertently eating food that is *haram*.

Food, or rather the lack thereof, is also tied into the religious practice of Muslims during the holy month of Ramadan. During this month, all healthy Muslims are required to abstain from food and drink from dawn until dusk. The day usually begins with a pre-dawn meal known as *suhur* and concludes with *iftar*, a meal to break the fast after sundown. Ramadan is a time of focused spiritual reflection and prayer that helps Muslims to practice self-control and to focus on empathy and acts of charity.

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. Foodways are the eating habits of a particular people or region. What are the influences on the foodways in your country? Do they differ by region? How did they arise?
2. Are there people in your community who have specific dietary restrictions or preferences because of religious or other personal beliefs? How does this specific diet impact their daily lives, especially when attempting to eat outside of their own home?
3. Are there particular holidays in your culture that are marked by specific food or drink? How do these holidays and the food practices inform the wider culture?



Zoezi M

You are an assistant in the study abroad office at your institution and have been asked to help prepare a group for a three-month study abroad trip. Your supervisor has asked you to take part in a panel about East African food and to speak briefly about an assigned topic (preparation of dishes, eating norms, market and buying practices, etc.). Present about your topic and then participate in a follow up discussion session.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

-kavu dry
-kienyeji local; indigenous
kolea well-seasoned

Conjunctions

ama; au or
badala ya instead of
bila without
ijapo even if
ikiwa if
ila except
ili so as; in order to
ingawa although
kama like; such as
kisha and then
kwa with
lakini but

Nouns

bakuli bowl
bizari turmeric; curry powder
giligilani coriander seed
hatua step
jani leaf
kahawia brown color
kifuniko lid; cover
kijiko spoon
kijiko cha kupakulia serving spoon
kikombe cup
kinu mortar; food mill
kisu knife
kitita bunch
kitunguu maji green onion
kiwango amount
lavani vanilla
maelekezo directions; instructions
mafanikio success
magadi baking soda
mapishi cookery, cuisine,
maelezo ya upishi recipe
moto fire; heat
msaada aid; help
mwiko wooden spoon
pati; karamu party
punje a single grain
sahani plate
sahani ya kupakulia serving dish

sherehe celebration
sikukuu holiday
sufuria pot; pan
tangawizi ginger
tawi branch
ubao wa kukata cutting board
uma fork
utaratibu process
vitunguu saumu garlic onions
viungo spices
zabibu kavu raisins (dried grapes)

Verbs

-acha to leave; to abandon
-alika to invite
-ambua to peel
-angalia to watch; to observe
-badilisha to change
-biringisha to roll
-chambua to clean; to sort
-changanya to mix
-changanyika to be mixed
-chemsha to boil
-choma to roast
-chonga to chop
-chungu to strain; to sift
-funika to cover
-funua to uncover
-gawa to divide
-geuka to change; to be transformed
-geuza to turn
-hakikisha to make sure; to ensure
-hudhuria to attend
-kaanga to fry
-kanda to knead
-katakata to chop; to cut into small pieces
-kausha to dry
-koroga to mix; to stir
-loweka to soak
-menya to peel; to strip away
-mimina to pour out in small measures
-mwaga to spill; to scatter
-oka to bake
-ondoa to remove
-ongeza to add
-onja to taste
-pakua to serve
-pasua to break; to crack
-pindua to turn over; to flip over
-ruka to skip; to jump
-safisha to clean

-songa to stir up a solid mass of food
-tia to put in; to insert
-toa to give; to offer
-tokota to boil; to simmer
-tosa to deep; to throw in
-tosha to be enough
-washa to ignite; to turn on
-yeyusha to melt

Key Phrases

Hakikisha chakula kisiungue. You should make sure the food is not burned.
Je, chakula kimeiva? Is the food ready?
kiasi ukipendacho as much as you like
Nichemshe kwa muda gani? How long should I boil?
Nimefuata hatua zote za kupika. I have followed all the recipe steps.
Ninahitaji kuongeza kiasi gani cha maji? What amount of water do I need to add?
Tafadhali kaanga mayai mawili. Please fry two eggs.
Uchemshe kwa dakika kumi. You should boil for ten minutes.
Umeweka mafuta kupita kiasi. You have put a lot of oil.
Unakula chakula pamoja na nini? What do you eat this dish with?
Unapikaje chakula hiki? How do you prepare this dish?
Uongeze chumvi kidogo. You should add a little salt.

Sources

5.1 Vyakula

- “Red Tea” by Jubair1985 is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Red_Tea.jpg
- “Glass of milk” by Santeri Viinamäki is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Glass_of_milk.jpg#/media/File:Glass_of_milk.jpg
- “A glass of water by [cipher] is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
<https://flickr.com/photos/h4ck/3221986177>
- “A small cup of coffee” by Julius Schorzman is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_small_cup_of_coffee.JPG#/media/File:A_small_cup_of_coffee.JPG
- “Beer Actor” by Alan Levine is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
<https://flickr.com/photos/cogdog/21127813750>
- “A glass of red wine” by Davide Restivo is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_glass_of_red_wine.jpg
- “Nectar of the Gods” by Cliff Johnson is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
https://www.flickr.com/photos/cliff_77/5262171843
- “A glass of fresh orange juice with oranges” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0/ Last accessed 3/10/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/31617293018>
- “Mandazi” by Paresh Jai is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/pareshjai/3738138649/>
- “Slices of dark fresh bread with seeds on dark wooden background” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/35453856570/>
- “Samosa” by Kalyan is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/35581095@N00/3048032066>
- “Uji cup, Pipeline Village, Nairobi” by Eduardo Zárata is licensed under CC BY ND 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/eduardozarate/3513914452>
- “Boiled Yam” by DromoTetteh is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 5/27/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BOILED_YAM.jpg
- “Arrowroot” by unknown author is in the public domain. <https://pxhere.com/en/photo/1039607>
- “Peanuts” by Daniella Segura are licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/77568040@N08/8483070167>
- “Macro Monday – egg” by Kate Ter Haar is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/katerha/32879654000>
- “Sausages” by Cristiano Betta is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
https://www.flickr.com/photos/cristiano_betta/432845289
- “Pancakes” by Michael Ocampo is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/coolmikeol/5046208238>
- “Close-up of fried bacon slices on a white plate” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/48769264901>
- “Daily Breakfast: Fried Potatoes” by Gary Todd is in the public domain. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/101561334@N08/33583531304>
- “Cereal” by musicfanatic29 is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/25572801@N00/414939826>
- “Blueberry Breakfast Parfait” by Meal Makeover Moms is licensed under CC BY ND 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/mealmakeovermoms/4808689185>
- “Quick baked beans” by Scott Veg is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/thrivingveg/11458453473>

- “Nancy’s Fruit Salad” by John Hrtiz is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/jhrtiz/135611124>
- “Bon big breakfast” by Bob Walker is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/rjw1/10493181183>
- “Fruit Plate, Croissant & Meusli” by TravelingOtter is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/travelingotter/2691328658>
- “Traditional Tanzanian food - pilau kuku, mishkaki, ndizi, &c” by Tcg111 is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Traditional_Tanzanian_food_-_pilau_kuku,_mishkaki,_ndizi,_%26c..JPG
- “Lake Tilapia, Ugali, Sukumawiki” by Mark Souther is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/132166227@N05/32030388823>
- “Tanzania food- Ugali na kuku wa kienyeji wa kuchoma” by Fredrick Mboma is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tanzania_food_-_Ugali_na_kuku_wa_kienyeji_wa_kuchoma.jpg
- “Pilau, beans & chapati” by Teddykip is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pilau,_beans_%26_chapati.jpg
- “Njahi, Nduma, Chapati, Kachumbari, chicken - an average Kikuyu party mix” by Shiku Ngigi is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Njahi,_Nduma,_Chapati,_Kachumbari,_chicken_-_an_average_Kikuyu_party_mix.JPG
- Text for Zoezi W is an expansion of materials presented in “Aina 7 ya vyakula vya kienyeji vitavyokuacha ukilamba vidole” by Sophia Mwangangi. Last accessed 5/27/2022.
<https://radiojambo.co.ke/habari/2019-05-31-aina-7-ya-vyakula-vya-kienyeji-vitavyokuacha-ukilamba-vidole/>

5.2. Kwenda mkahawani

- “Bolt Food Delivery” by Brenda Wawire is licensed under CC BY NC.

5.3 Kununua vyakula sokoni

- “Arusha, market” by Deborah is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 5/27/2022.
https://www.flickr.com/photos/deborah_s_perspective/42815143502
- “Kale-Bundle” by Evan Amos is licensed under CC0 1.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kale-Bundle.jpg>
- “Red Pepper” by George Hodan is licensed under CC0 1.0. Last accessed 04/17/2023.
<https://www.publicdomainpictures.net/en/view-image.php?image=183312&picture=red-pepper>
- “Cabbage” by Tristan Scmurr is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022/
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/kewl/6471030841>
- “Cogombre llarg holandès (fruit)” by MacConkey is licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. Last accessed 04/17/2023.
[https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cogombre_llarg_holand%C3%A8s_\(fruit\).png](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cogombre_llarg_holand%C3%A8s_(fruit).png)
- “3 x Small eggplant 2017 A2” by Fructibus is licensed under CC0 1.0. Last accessed 04/17/2023.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:3_x_Small_eggplant_2017_A2.jpg
- “Cilantro” by Stacy Spensley is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/notahipster/4548900102>
- “Fresh Broccoli” by Liz West is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/calliope/7572101152>
- “Mushrooms Fungi Nature” by flutie8211 via Pixabay is licensed under CC0. Last accessed 04/17/2023. <https://pixabay.com/illustrations/mushrooms-fungi-nature-organic-7706327/>
- “Green beans” by Gavin Mahalo is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/144095318@N08/26920896373>

- “3 types of lentil” by Justinc is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:3_types_of_lentil.jpg
- “Peas” by Gavin Firkser is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
https://www.flickr.com/photos/g_firkser/6129298145
- “Bean market 11” by CIAT/Neil Palmer is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/ciat/4105131313>
- “Rice” by WayTru is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 8/1/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/waytru/548571403>
- “Flour and wheat in wooden bowls on darkk background” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/50867817003>
- “Africa Food Security 12” by Kate Holt / Africa Practice is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Africa_Food_Security_12_\(10665035905\).jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Africa_Food_Security_12_(10665035905).jpg)
- “Sorghum at the market” by Natnael Tadele is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sorghum_at_the_market.JPG
- “Millet 01” by Amuzujoe is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Millet_01.jpg
- “Cinnamon by Kjekkenustyr Net is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/146966953@N02/37641954626>
- “Various kinds of pepper next to a wooden pepper grinder on black background” by Ivan Radic is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/6/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/26344495@N05/51180210245>
- “Cumin spice” by unknown author is licensed under CC BY SA 1/0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. Modifications to original made by Jonathan Perkins.
<https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cumin-spice.jpg>
- “Ginger Rhizome” by Malcom Koo is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ginger_rhizome.jpg#/media/File:Ginger_rhizome.jpg
- “[Nutmeg]” by Herusutimbul is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Biji_Pala_Bubuk.jpg#/media/File:Biji_Pala_Bubuk.jpg
- “Cloves” by Jorge Barrios is in the public domain. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
<https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cloves.JPG#/media/File:Cloves.JPG>
- “Saffron salonik” by Salonik Saffron is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022/
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Saffron_salonik.jpg#/media/File:Saffron_salonik.jpg
- “Turmeric” by Molly Via is in the public domain. Last accessed 6/7/2022/.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/141669340@N08/43687036642>
- “Ndizi na kitimoto cha kukaanga” by Frederick Mboma is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tanzania_food_-_Ndizi_na_kitimoto_cha_kukaanga.jpg
- “Orange Fruit Pieces” by Evan-Amos is licensed under CC BY SA 3.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Orange-Fruit-Pieces.jpg#/media/File:Orange-Fruit-Pieces.jpg>
- “Mangoes” by spurekar is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/spurekar/5761392337>
- “Lemon” by André Karwath is licensed under CC BY SA 2.5. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lemon.jpg>
- “Pineapple” by Kyle McDonald is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/kylemcdonald/3443116234>
- “Avocado” by Chad Miller is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/chadmiller/69170988>

- “Watermelon” by Sam Valadi is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/132084522@N05/16963246821>
- “Grapes” by Tara Schmidt is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/taramarie/1434666718>
- “Sliced Tomatoes” by Alabama Extension is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/184594136@N08/50408999768/>
- “Garden Strawberries in Germany” by Leoi Johannes is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Garden_Strawberries_in_Germany_-_edited.jpg
- “Olives” by CeresB is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/37054091@N06/5622055101>
- “Dates” by Daniel R. Blume is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/dr62/990802343>
- “Fuji Apple” by Scott Bauer USDA ARS is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/17/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fuji_apple.jpg
- Screen capture from *Zanzibar: Spices, Slaves and the Spirit of Independence – Street Food* by Al Jazaeera English. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/7/2022/.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nQobCj1kUuM>
- Screen capture from *Spent 24 Hours in Stonetown, Zanzibar | Street Food* by Tayo Aina. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/7/2022/. https://youtu.be/LG_qM-Zp7ww
- Screen capture from *The Best Zanzibar Street Food at Forodhani Night Food Market in Stonetown* by Alex Tackie. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/7/2022.
<https://youtu.be/y6lZ1gcb-Ss>
- “Kariakoo Street Markets” by Scott Edmunds is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/30557460@N05/46905618885>
- “M-PESA mobile money and Equity agent, Nairobi, Kenya” by Fiona Graham / WorldRemit is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. Cropped by Jonathan Perkins.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/worldremit/30302946185>

5.4 Kuandaa vyakula

- “Cleaning Veggies in Running Water” by Tracy Nicholls. CSIRO is licensed under CC BY 3.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CSIRO_ScienceImage_2709_Cleaning_Vegies_in_Running_Water.jpg
- “IMG_3368-ps” [chopping onions] by Allison Matherly is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/allison-a-ralston/5928650588>
- “Flour” by Melissa Wiese is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/42dreams/2452861482>
- “Hand pouring milk to cup of coffee. Café background” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/43075125582>
- “Flower Cupcake Recipe” by Jamie is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/jamiesrabbits/5791396338>
- “Grilled meat and smoke” by DeusXFlorida is licensed under CCBY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/8363028@N08/4622842631>
- “Boiling Eggs” by Alabama Extension is in the public domain. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
https://www.flickr.com/photos/alabama_extension/50994372611
- “Banana fry in hot oil golden” by Irvin Calicut is licensed under CC BY SA 3.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Banana_fry_in_hot_oil_golden.JPG#/media/File:Banana_fry_in_hot_oil_golden.JPG
- “Four siemens” [pizza in oven] by Thomas van de Weerd is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.

- “Swahili coast” by Runehelmet is licensed under CC BY SA 3.0 Unported. Last accessed 6/10/22.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Swahili_coast.png
- “Seal of Kenya Bureau of Halal Certification”. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/10/22.
<https://www.kbhc.info/>

6. Somo la sita

Afya na hali ya maisha

Essential Questions:

1. How do cultural practices around health and ailments in your culture differ from those of other cultures that you know?
2. What customs and practices does your culture have with regard to treating the sick and those with health conditions?
3. What are the common practices around clothing in your culture? How are they different from other cultures?
4. What are common practices around different weather seasons in your culture? How are they different from other cultures?
5. What are some common or traditional celebrations in your culture and what is their significance? How do the traditions and celebrations for these occasions differ from those of other cultures?

Stage One:

By the end of this unit, students should be able to:

- describe symptoms of an ailment (Presentational speaking or writing);
- ask and answer general questions about health and well-being in both casual conversation and more formal medical contexts (Interpersonal speaking);
- compare and contrast cultural practices around illnesses in East Africa to those in their own culture, including the provision of medical care (Cultural comparisons);
- identify common symptoms of an illness from a written text (Interpretive listening or reading);
- discuss clothing appropriate for different occasions (casual, semi-formal, formal, business, or official purposes) as well as personal clothing preferences (Presentational speaking or writing);
- interact with sales staff with regard to buying clothing and souvenirs at the market or malls (Interpersonal speaking);
- provide general descriptions of a person with regard to physical appearance, height, weight, and manner of dress (Presentational speaking or writing);
- identify the physical, height, weight or dressing of a person from an oral or written text (Interpretive reading or writing);
- ask and answer questions about the weather condition in their context and others (Interpersonal speaking);
- compare and contrast beliefs surrounding weather prediction in their own culture and others (Cultural comparisons);
- describe weather patterns in East Africa and other familiar contexts (Presentational speaking or writing);
- identify weather patterns, conditions, updates or warnings from a newspaper article or weather app or weather forecast (Interpretive reading or listening);
- compare and contrast weather patterns and seasons in their own culture with those of East Africa (Cultural comparisons);

- ask and answer questions about cultural celebrations in East Africa or their culture (Interpersonal speaking)
- compare and contrast celebrations in East Africa and their own culture, especially with regard to clothing and food expectations (Cultural comparisons).

Stage Two:

What will be acceptable evidence of the student's knowledge and ability?

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students will read or listen to a text about common tropical ailments and identify the causes, symptoms, and treatment. Students will watch videos of weather forecasts in East Africa and write a summary of the main ideas from the forecast announcements. Students will read newspaper articles about clothing in East Africa and respond to questions. Students will read or listen to an advertisement (health care products or clothing items) and write a summary of the main ideas. Students will read a blog post of a celebration in East Africa and identify the type of celebration, its activities, and cultural significance.	Students will exchange information about their clothing preferences during different weather conditions and seasons. Students will exchange information about their health condition or another person's. Students will role-play a visit to the doctor's office where they will exchange information about their condition with the nurse and also visit other offices in the hospital as directed (the laboratory, specific clinics, and pharmacy) and engage in conversations with the hospital staff. Students will exchange information about their celebration preferences.	Students will present a poster about the different seasons and climatic conditions of their contexts. They will include information about duration, common activities, and weather conditions during the different seasons. Students will make a presentation about an East African cultural celebration. They will include information about the cultural significance of the celebration, activities, food and drinks served, clothing, among others. Students will write blog posts to share with others information about their cultural experiences in East Africa, i.e., cultural celebrations. Students will make a presentation about a common tropical ailment.

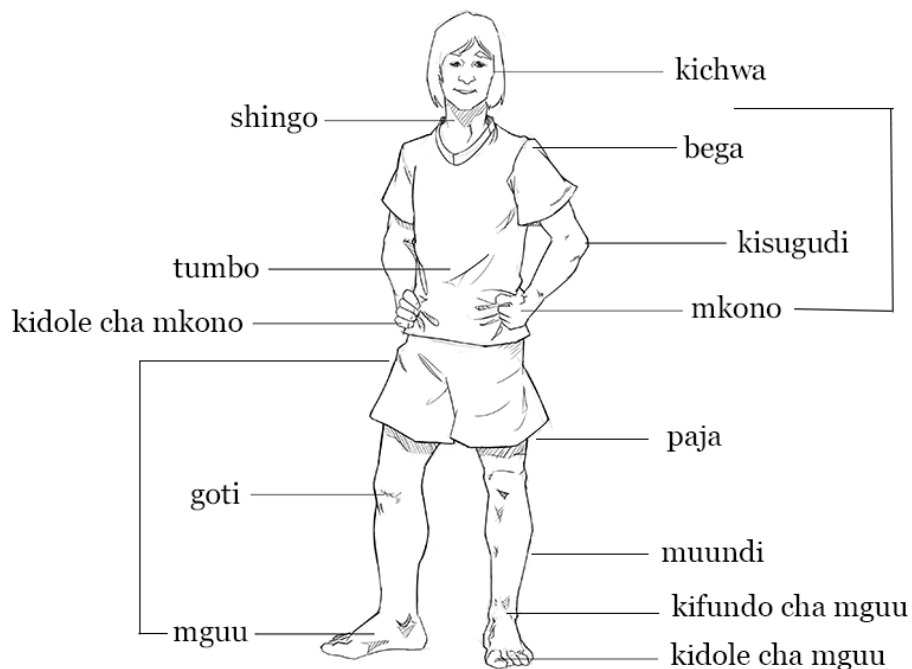
Stage Three:

What activities will students participate in to prepare them to demonstrate what they know and can do?

6.1 Afya na magonjwa



Zoezi A



Joseph is sore after getting hurt playing soccer. When he comes to the living room, he tells Farida about his aches and pains. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Farida: Uko sawa Joseph? Mbona unachechemea ukitembea?

Joseph: Bibi Farida nilianguka nilipokuwa nikicheza leo asubuhi kwenye mashindano baina ya timu ya Chuo Kikuu cha Dar es Salaam na Chuo Kikuu cha Kenyatta.

Farida: Pole sana Joseph. Una maumivu gani?

Joseph: Goti langu linauma pia kifundo cha mguu kimechubuka na kina vuja damu.

Farida: Je, ni goti la kushoto au la kulia linalouma?

Joseph: Nimeumia sehemu ya mguu wa kulia na pia bega la kulia. Nilipata huduma ya kwanza uwanjani lakini bado ninahisi uchungu sana.

Farida: Pole sana kwa maumivu. Ninaona ngozi yako imechubuka sana. Ninatumai kuwa mshipa wako haujaumia. Pumzika kidogo ili maumivu yako yapungue. Shika hii barafu utie kwenye goti lako lenye maumivu. Je, bega pia limeumia?

Joseph: Ndiyo, bega langu pia limeumia kwa sababu ya kuanguka chini.

Farida: Pole sana. Ingia ndani ya nyumba ili upumzike. Pia meza dawa hizi za kupunguza uchungu. Iwapo maumivu yatazidi tutaenda kumwona daktari.

Joseph: Sawa. Ninashukuru.

1. Joseph ana maumivu katika sehemu gani za mwili?
2. Mechi ambayo Joseph, alikuwa akicheza ilikuwa baina ya timu gani?
3. Joseph ameumia upande gani wa mwili?
4. Joseph aliumia alipokuwa akifanya nini?
5. Bibi Farida amemshauri Joseph kufanya nini?



Zoezi B

Joseph is not feeling any better the next day and decides to visit the pharmacist with his friend Matata. He then runs into Shamila and tells her about the injury. Read the two conversations and answer the questions that follow.



Mfamasia: Hujambo? Nikusaidiaje?

Joseph: Sijambo, lakini mimi ni mgonjwa kidogo. Nilipata jeraha uwanjani siku ya jumamosi nilipokuwa nikicheza mechi ya kandanda na nina maumivu mengi sana.

Mfamasia: Pole sana Joseph kwa jeraha lako. Ninaona unachechemea. Unahisi vipi?

Joseph: Ninaumwa na mguu na bega upande wa kulia. Ninaumwa pia na shingo na kichwa.

Mfamasia: Pole sana. Umekunywa dawa zingine zozote?

Joseph: Nilipoanguka nilipata huduma ya kwanza uwanjani. Muuguzi alinikagua akabaini kuwa mishipa ya bega na mguu haijaathirika. Nilipata dawa za kupunguza uchungu ambazo nimekunywa kwa siku mbili lakini bado ninahisi maumivu.

Mfamasia: Nitakupatia **Naproxen** kwa kuwa ni dawa ya kupunguza maumivu ambayo huondoa uvimbe na ugumu wa viungo. Nina uhakika utapata nafuu baada ya kuitumia. Gharama ya dawa hizi zote ni shilingi elfu kumi na saba na mia moja na kumi. Je, una bima ya afya?

Joseph: Sina bima ya afya. Nitalipa pesa taslimu. Ninahitaji kutumia dawa hizi kwa muda gani?

Mfamasia: Utahitaji kunywa vidonge viwili mara mbili kwa siku kwa muda wa wiki moja. Maumivu yakizidi unapaswa kwenda kwa hospitali. Daktari anaweza kukushauri utumie vidonge vya **Co-codamol** kwa kuwa vina uwezo mkubwa zaidi wa kupunguza maumivu makali.

Joseph: Asante sana. Ninashukuru kwa ushauri wako.

Joseph takes the medication. On his way out from the pharmacy, he meets Shamila. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Uhali gani Joseph?

Joseph: Nzuri lakini nina maumivu. Niliumia kwenye goti na kwa siku mbili sijaweza kupindua shingo langu wala kuweza kutembea vizuri.

Shamila: Unahitaji kupumzika kwa sababu ninafikiri hujaweza kulala vizuri. Unakaa mchovu sana. Tafadhali nipigie simu iwapo utahitaji msaada wowote. Nitamjulisha mwalimu Bakari kuwa hutaweza kuhudhuria darasa la Kiswahili kesho kwa sababu wewe ni mgonjwa.

Joseph: Sawa. Ninashukuru. Nitakupigia simu baadaye. Ninakutakia mchana mwema.

Shamila: Kuwa na mchana mwema pia. Ninakutakia afueni.

1. Joseph anaumwa kwenye sehemu gani za mwili?
2. Nini chanzo cha maumivu ya Joseph?
3. Joseph amepata matibabu gani?
4. Mfamasia amempatia Joseph dawa gani?
5. Dawa ambayo amepewa Joseph itamsaidiaje?
6. Iwapo maumivu yatazidi, Mfamasia anamshauri Joseph kufanya nini?
7. Joseph atatumia njia gani kulipia dawa?
8. Je, Joseph ataweza kuhudhuria darasa lake la Kiswahili?
9. Shamila anafikiri hali ya Joseph ikoje?
10. Shamila na Joseph wanapanga kufanya nini baadaye?



Zoezi C

Provide the plurals for the body parts given below.

1. kichwa _____
2. shingo _____
3. bega _____
4. kifua _____
5. mgongo _____
6. tumbo _____
7. mkono _____
8. kisugudi _____
9. kidole cha mkono _____
10. nyonga _____
11. mguu _____
12. goti _____
13. kifundo cha mguu _____
14. kidole cha mguu _____



Zoezi D

Pretend that everyone in the class is suffering from random aches and pains. One student should touch the part of their body that hurts, name it and express the degree of pain that they are experiencing. The next student should describe the ailment the first person has and then describe their own ailment. The next student should describe the first two students' ailments before describing their own. Continue until each student in the class has spoken. Pay careful attention to the class of the noun being used.

Examples:

Jicho langu linauma.

Mguu wa Juma wa kulia unauma.

Kifua cha Amina kinauma.

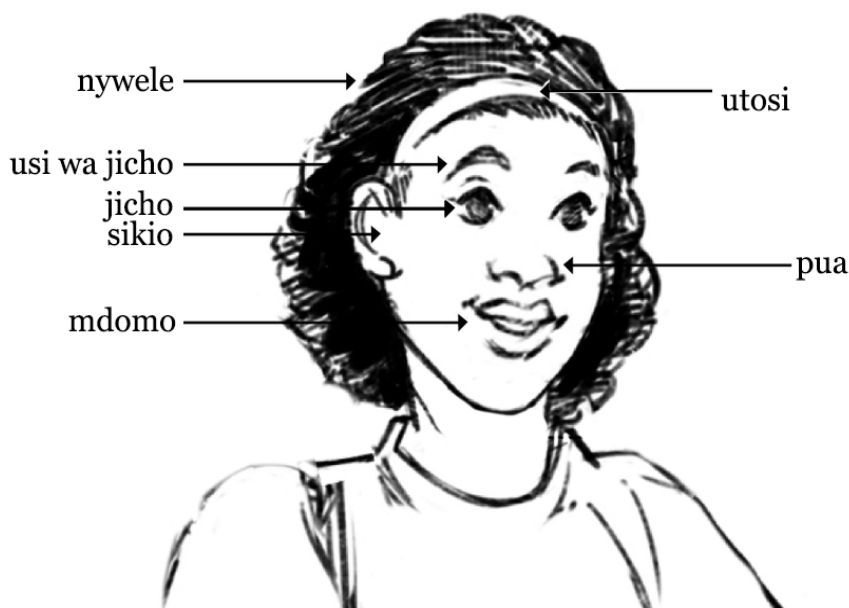


Zoezi E

Write a report on the ailments that were described in the previous activity. If you have forgotten any of the details, you will need to ask your classmates to refresh your memory.

Sarufi: Ngeli ya U-U (*The U-U Noun class*)

You saw a large number of nouns beginning in *u-* at the beginning of the book when we learned the names of countries (Uingereza, Ufaransa, Usomali, Uhindi). There are also a large number of nouns in this class that have to do with various parts of the human body, including the face (*uso*) and crown of the head (*utosi*).



This class has the following nouns: concrete nouns with various plurals, uncountable nouns with no plural forms, nouns that are mostly formed from adjectives, nominals, or verbal roots and names of countries.

Concrete nouns fall into various categories with regard to how their plurals are formed:

- plurals in **ny-**, which include *uso* (face) and *usi wa jicho* (eyebrow), as well as *ua* (courtyard), *uma* (fork), *wakati* (time), and *wimbo* (song)
- plurals in **nd-**, which include *ulimi* (tongue) and *udevu* (beard)
- plurals in **mb-**, which include *ubavu* (rib) and *ubawa* (wing)
- plurals created by **removing the u-** at the beginning of the word, which include *unywele* (a single strand of hair), *utumbo* (intestines), *unyayo* (soles of the feet), as well as *ufunguo* (key) and *ukuta* (wall)

The uncountable nouns in this class with no plural forms include:

- *udongo* (soil/ground)
- *ufuta* (sesame)
- *ugali* (corn marsh)
- *uji* (porridge)
- *unga* (flour)

The nouns that are mostly formed from adjectives include:

- *ubaya* (badness)
- *ubora* (goodness)
- *uchoyo* (meanness)
- *uhodari* (smartness)
- *ulafi* (greediness)

Nouns formed from nominals include:

- *ujamaa* (community) – from *jamaa* (group of people)
- *ujana* (youth) – from *kijana* (young person)
- *umaskini* (poverty) – from *maskini* (poor person)
- *utoto* (childhood) – from *mtoto* (child)
- *uzee* (old age) – from *mzee* (old person)

Nouns that are formed from verbal roots include:

- *uangalifu* (keenness) – from *kuangalia* (to look)
- *upendo* (love) – from *kupenda* (to love)
- *usahaulifu* (forgetfulness) – from *kusahau* (to forget)
- *uwezo* (ability/capacity) – from *kuweza* (to be able)

The U-noun class also includes the names of countries like *Uingereza* (England), *Ufaransa* (France), *Uhispania* (Spain), *Uturuki* (Turkey) that were discussed in the introductory units of Volume 1.

When using a verb, this noun class uses *-u* in singular and *-zi* in plural for sentence formation. However, uncountable nouns and nouns that are formed from adjectival, nominal, or verbal roots use only *-u*.

Uso wake **umeharibika**.
His/her face is all broken out.

Nyuso zao **zimeharibika**.
Their faces are all broken out.

Ukuta mrefu **umevunjika**.
The tall wall has cracked.

Kuta ndefu **zimevunjika**.
The tall walls have cracked.

Ulimi **unauma**.
The tongue hurts.

Ndimi **zinauma**.
The tongues hurt.

Ugali **umeiva**.
The corn mash is cooked.

Urafiki wao **unaonekana**.
Their friendship is evident.



Zoezi F

Provide the plurals for the body parts given below. Note that not all of them are from the *u*-noun classes.

1. unywele _____
2. pua _____
3. jicho _____
4. utosi _____
5. mguu _____
6. shingo _____
7. sikio _____
8. usi wa jicho _____
9. unyayo _____
10. mdomo _____



Zoezi G

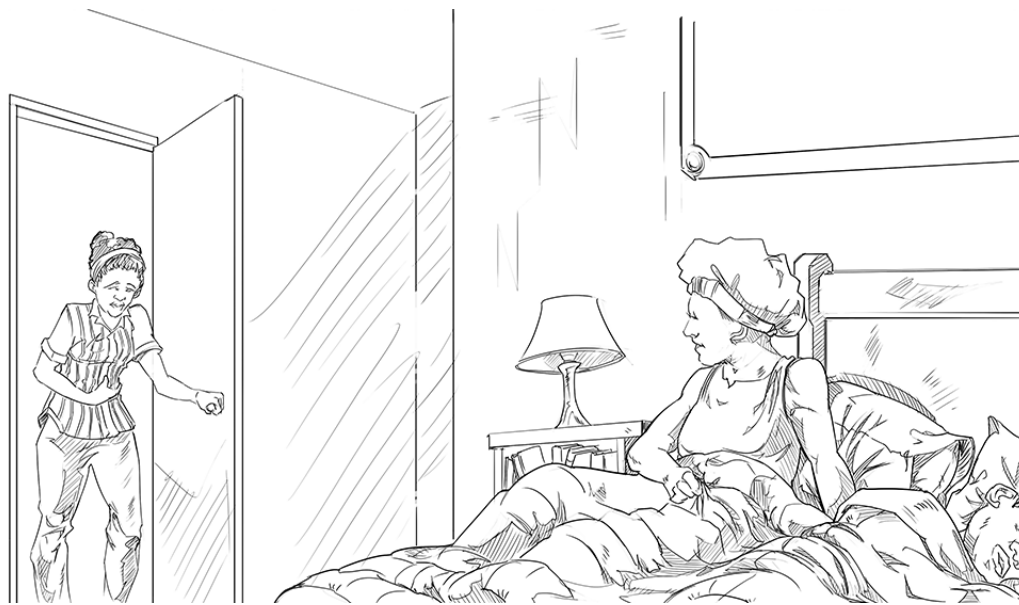
Convert all of the nouns in the following sentences from singular to plural (or vice versa). Pay careful attention to the agreement of nouns and verbs.

1. Ulimi unauma kuliko meno. _____
2. Ubavu wa mwanafunzi umevunjika. _____
3. Uso wa mtoto umesafishwa. _____
4. Ufunguo wake umepotea. _____
5. Uji wake umemwagika. _____
6. Ubora wao unapendeza. _____
7. Ndevu zake ni ndefu. _____
8. Mbao za nyumba zimefika. _____
9. Kuta ndefu zimepakwa rangi. _____
10. Kurasa za vitabu zimechafuka. _____



Zoezi H

After going out the night before with friends, Shamila wakes up with stomach problems. She knocks at the door of her host mother to get some help. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Shikamoo mama. Habari za asubuhi?

Farida: Marahaba Shamila. U hali gani? Mbona umeamka mapema hivi? Je, ulilala vizuri?

Shamila: Nzuri mama, lakini mimi ni mgonjwa kidogo. Sikulala usiku mzima.

Farida: Pole sana. Unahisi maumivu gani?

Shamila: Tumbo langu linauma sana.

Farida: Pole sana. Tumbo lilianza kukuuma lini?

Shamila: Tumbo lilianza kuniuma baada ya chakula cha jioni jana. Nina Maumivu makali sana. Sijaweza kupata hata lepe la usingizi.

Farida: Pole sana Shamila. Je, unafikiri ni kwa sababu ya chakula ulichokila jana jioni?

Shamila: Sina uhakika, kwa sababu nilikula vyakula ambavyo mimi hula kila mara. Nilikula wali kwa maharage na kabeji. Lakini chakula cha mchana nilikula mkahawani. Sijawahi kwenda tena kwa mkahawa huo.

Farida: Usijali utapona. Mbali na maumivu makali je, una dalili zingine za ugonjwa?

Shamila: Ninahisi kichefuchefu sana. Nilitapika kidogo. Sina hamu ya chakula pia. Ningependa kwenda hospitalini ili nipate matibabu.

Farida: Bila shaka ni muhimu twende hospitalini ili umwone daktari. Ungependa kunywa maji au chai kabla ya kwenda hospitalini?

Shamila: Sina hamu ya kula wala kunywa chochote lakini nitabeba chupa ya maji.

Farida: Sawa. Wacha nijitayarishe. Jitayarishe pia ili tuondoke baada ya dakika kumi na tano.

Shamila: Sawa mama. Nitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika kumi na tano.

Farida: Ninakutakia afueni. Hakikisha umebeba kitambulisho chako na bima yako ya afya.

1. Shamila ana maumivu gani?
2. Je, Shamila aliweza kulala usiku wa kuamkia asubuhi hii? Eleza kwa nini?
3. Shamila ana dalili gani zingine za ugonjwa?
4. Shamila amefanya maamuzi gani ili kupata usaidizi?
5. Farida alimkumbusha Shamila kubeba stakabadhi gani?
6. Unafikiri nini chanzo cha maumivu ya Shamila?
7. Wewe hufanya nini unapokuwa mgonjwa?



Zoezi I

Your friend has been unwell but has not gone to see the doctor. Find out how they are feeling and offer to help out as needed.



Zoezi J

Shamila and Farida seek medical attention at Tabata Seregea hospital in their neighborhood. Read Shamila's conversation with the hospital receptionist and answer the questions that follow.

Mpokezi: Habari gani dada? Nikusaidiaje?

Shamila: Nzuri lakini mimi ni mgonjwa kidogo.

Mpokezi: Pole sana. Nitakusadia ili umwone daktari kwa haraka. Ningependa unipe maelezo yako kwa kifupi.

Shamila: Sawa.

Mpokezi: Unaitwa nani? Una umri wa miaka mingapi?

Shamila: Jina langu ni Shamila Jones. Nina umri wa miaka ishirini na miwili.

Mpokezi: Unaishi wapi au anwani yako ni gani?

Shamila: Ninaishi katika mtaa wa Sarakasi nyumba nambari kumi na tatu.

Mpokezi: Je, umesafiri nje ya Dar es Salaam kwenye wiki mbili zilizopita?

Shamila: Hapana sijasafiri nje ya Dar es Salaam kwenye wiki mbili zilizopita.

Mpokezi: Ningependa ujaze fomu hii, kisha nitaingiza maelezo yako kwenye mfumo wa hospitali.

(The receptionist hands the form to Shamila.)

Shamila: Sawa.

Mpokezi: Je, una bima ya afya?

Shamila: Ndiyo nina bima ya afya ya kampuni ya Jubilee.

Mpokezi: Tafadhali, nipe kadi yako ya bima ya afya.

(Shamila hands over her insurance card and continues to fill the form. After she has finished, she hands it back to the receptionist.)

Shamila: Hii hapa fomu ambayo nimemaliza kujaza.

Mpokezi: Sawa. Tafadhali tia sahihi hapa. Kisha uketi pale usubiri kumwona daktari.

Shamila: Sawa. Ninashukuru.

1. Je, Shamila alikuwa na bima ya afya?
2. Je, Shamila alisafiri nje ya jiji la Dar es Salaam kwenye wiki mbili zilizopita?
3. Shamila alienda kupata matibabu katika hospitali gani?
4. Baada ya kujaza fomu, Shamila alifanya nini?
5. Shamila anaishi wapi?
6. Shamila ana miaka mingapi?
7. Wewe hufanya nini unapoenda hospitali kabla ya kumwona daktari?



Zoezi K

You are at a local hospital in Dar es Salaam during your study abroad stay. You are required to fill the insurance medical claim form below before you can see the doctor.

IN-PATIENT CLAIM FORM

Sehemu I - Kukamilishwa na mgonjwa/mwanachama

Jina kamili la mgonjwa	
Nambari ya uanachama	
Nambari ya simu	
Nambari ya kitambulisho.	
Tarehe ya kuzaliwa	
Jina la mwanachama (ikiwa mgonjwa ni mtegemezi)	
Jina la mwajiri wa mwanachama	
Ugonjwa wa sasa ulianza lini?	
Umewahi kuugua ugonjwa huu siku za nyuma?	ndiyo/ hapana
Kama ndiyo, ulianza kuugua lini na umeugua mara ngapi?	



Zoezi L

You need to go to the local clinic because you are feeling sick. The administrator asks you for your personal information before you can see the clinical officer for consultation. Working with a partner, role-play the conversation with the clinic administrator. Ask at least seven questions. If you finish early, reverse roles with your partner.



Zoezi M

Shamila is called to a room with a nurse who takes her temperature (*joto*), checks her blood pressure (*shinikizo la damu*) and asks a few questions about how she is feeling. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Nesi: Habari za mchana?

Shamila: Nzuri kidogo. Uko salama? Habari za kazi?

Nesi: Niko salama. Kazi inaendelea vizuri sana. Ningependa kukufanyia vipimo vichache. Kwanza nitakupima joto kwenye kipaji chako.

(The nurse takes Shamila's temperature on her forehead.)

Nesi: Joto lako ni nyuzi mia moja na nne. Una joto kali. Sasa nitapima shinikizo lako la damu. Tafadhali nyosha mkono wako wa kulia.

(Shamila stretches her right hand towards the nurse.)

Nesi: Shinikizo lako la damu liko sawa, lina vipimo vya kawaida. Nyosha kidole cha mkono wako wa kulia ili nipime pigo la moyo. Ninaona pigo lako la moyo liko sawa.

(The nurse records the vitals on a form.)

Nesi: Unahisi vipi?

Shamila: Nina maumivu makali sana kwenye tumbo langu. Pia ninahisi kichefuchefu na sina hamu ya chakula.

Nesi: Maumivu ya tumbo yalianza lini?

Shamila: Maumivu yalianza jana usiku mwendo wa saa mbili za usiku.

Nesi: Je, ulikula chakula chochote cha kigeni?

Shamila: Nilikula chakula cha kawaida, lakini mchana nilikula kwa mkahawa mgeni. Nilikula saladi, nyama ya nguruwe, chapati na mchuzi wa maharage.

Nesi: Umesema unahisi kichefuchefu pia? Je, umetapika tangu maumivu yako yaanze?

Shamila: Ndiyo, nilitapika mara mbili jana usiku.

Nesi: Je, umeendesha tangu maumivu yako yaanze?

Shamila: Hapana.

Nesi: Kwa kiwango cha moja hadi kumi, maumivu yako ni kiwango gani?

Shamila: Maumivu yangu yako kwenye kiwango cha saba.

Nesi: Nitakupa dawa za kupunguza joto sasa kisha utasubiri kumwona daktari. Meza hizi tembe mbili. Maji ndiyo haya.

(The nurse hands Shamila a glass of water.)

Shamila: Sawa.

1. Nesi alimfanyia Shamila vipimo gani?
2. Shamila ana joto kiasi gani?
3. Shamila alikula chakula kipi mkahawani?
4. Shamila alianza kuhisi maumivu mwendo wa saa ngapi?
5. Shamila ana dalili gani za ugonjwa?
6. Je, Shamila ameendesha na kutapika tangu aanze kuwa mgonjwa?
7. Kwa nini nesi amempa Shamila dawa?
8. Ni kitu gani ambacho unapenda unapoenda hospitalini?
9. Ni kitu gani ambacho hupendi unapoenda hospitalini?



Zoezi N

You have gone to a local hospital for treatment because you have been feeling unwell for the last few days. After completing the insurance paperwork, the nurse checks your vital signs and discusses your symptoms. Take turns with a classmate with each person playing the role of the nurse and asking at least five questions.



Zoezi O

Shamila is called into the doctor's room. She speaks to the doctor about feeling dizzy (*kizunguzungu*) and is given an injection (*sindano*) after her test results come back. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Daktari: Vipi Shamila? Unahisi vipi?

Shamila: Salama. Nina maumivu makali sana kwenye tumbo langu tangu jana usiku. Pia nilitapika mara mbili, nina joto jingi, ninahisi kichefuchefu sana, ninatoa jasho jingi, ninahisi uchovu, na sina hamu ya chakula wala kinywaji chochote.

Daktari: Umekuwa na maumivu haya kwa muda gani?

Shamila: Nilianza kuumwa jana usiku. Maumivu hayajapungua hata kidogo tangu jana.

Daktari: Je, unaumwa na kichwa?

Shamila: Hapana, sina maumivu ya kichwa.

Daktari: Nitakutuma kwa maabara ili ufanyiwe vipimo ambavyo vitatusaidia kubaini pahali penye shida kwenye mwili wako. Ningependa upeleke karatasi hii kwa maabara. Itachukua saa nzima kwa vipimo vyote kukamilika. Baada ya kupokea majibu ningependa urejee kwenye ofisi hii.

(After 20 minutes.)

Shamila: Nimeelezewa kuwa vipimo vyangu vimetumwa kwako kupitia kwa mtandao.

Daktari: Ndiyo, nimevipokea vipimo vyako. Kutokana na dalili ambazo umenieleza vipimo vinathibitisha kuwa una ugua homa ya matumbo. Baadhi ya dalili za homa ya matumbo ni uchovu, kuumwa na kichwa au tumbo, kutapika, kuendesha na kukosa hamu ya chakula.

Shamila: Je, chanzo cha homa ya matumbo ni nini?

Daktari: Maambukizi ya homa ya matumbo hutokana na kunywa maji machafu au chakula kilichoathiriwa na uchafu.

Shamila: Je, huenda chakula au maji niliyokunywa mkahawani hayakuwa safi?

Daktari: Labda. Nesi atakudunga sindano. Utatumia dawa hizi kwa muda wa wiki mbili. Maumivu yakizidi baada ya siku nne ningependa urejee hospitalini. Je, kabla ya safari yako, ulipokea chanjo dhidi ya homa ya matumbo?

Shamila: La, sikupokea chanjo yoyote.

Daktari: Hakuna shida, dawa hizi zitakusaidia sana. Hakikisha pia unakunywa maji mengi safi na pia unakula matunda mengi

Shamila: Sawa. Ninashukuru sana.

1. Shamila alienda wapi kufanyiwa vipimo vya ugonjwa?
2. Shamila anaugua ugonjwa gani?
3. Ni nini chanzo cha ugonjwa wa Shamila ?
4. Shamila amepata matibabu gani?
5. Shamila atatumia dawa kwa muda gani?
6. Daktari alimshauri Shamila kufanya nini?
7. Unafikiri chakula alichokula Shamila mkahawani kilikuwa safi?
8. Je, Shamila alipokea chanjo ya homa ya matumbo kabla ya safari yake?



Zoezi P

After your preliminary meeting with the nurse, you meet with the doctor to discuss your symptoms. Take turns with a classmate with each person playing the role of the doctor and asking at least five questions.



Zoezi Q

Listen to the radio advertisement. Write a complete word for word transcript of what you hear and be prepared to summarize what you have learned about the product.



Zoezi R

Malaria is quite prevalent in East Africa, causing tens of thousands of deaths a year. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow.

Malaria ni ugonjwa unaosababishwa na vimelea. Vimelea hawa husambaza ugonjwa huu kupitia kuumwa na umbu aliyeathirika. Watu wanaougua Malaria huhisi joto jingi na hutetemeka mno. Licha ya hayo, ugonjwa huu haupatikani mahali ambapo hali ya hewa ni wastani. Ugonjwa wa Malaria hupatikana katika nchi za kitropiki. Kila mwaka, takriban



watu milioni mia mbili tisini huambukizwa na ugonjwa wa Malaria na zaidi ya watu elfu mia nne hufariki kutokana na ugonjwa huu.

Ili kupunguza kusambaa kwa ugonjwa wa Malaria, Shirika la Afya Duniani limeanzisha huduma za kupeana dawa za kuzuia maambuziki ya ugonjwa huu. Vile vile shirika la afya duniani linatoa kwa kiwango kikubwa neti/chandarua zilizotibiwa kuwazuia watu kuumwa na umbu. Shirika la Afya Duniani limependekeza kutolewa kwa chanjo itakayotumiwa na watoto wanaoishi katika mataifa ambayo yanakumbwa na asilimia kubwa ya ugonjwa wa Malaria.

Neti zilizotibiwa au mavazi na dawa za kuua wadudu zinaweza kusaidia kujikinga au kuzuia maambuziki ya Malaria wakati ambapo mtu anasafiri. Pia kabla ya kusafiri kwenye maeneo ya kitropiki, watu wanahimizwa kutumia dawa za kujikinga na Malaria. Unaweza kumeza dawa kabla ya safari yako na baada ya safari yako au pia unaweza kumeza tembe za kujikinga na Malaria kila siku wakati wa safari yako. Haya yote hutegemea na ushauri wa daktari. Changamoto kuu kwenye vita dhidi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria ni kuwa vimelea hivi vina upinzani mkubwa na dawa ambazo zinatumika kwa matibabu ya ugonjwa huu. Kwa hivyo wanasayansi wana kazi kubwa ya kuendeleza utafiti ili kubaini dawa nzuri za kupigana na vimelea hawa.

DALILI ZA UGONJWA WA MALARIA:

- Joto jingi mwilini
- Kuumwa na kichwa
- Kuhisi kichefuchefu na kutapika
- Kuendesha
- Maumivu ya tumbo
- Uchovu

- Kupumua kwa haraka
- Kikohozi
- Baridi kali
- Kukosa hamu ya chakula
- Maumivu ya misuli
- Mpigo wa haraka wa kifua

CHANZO CHA UGONJWA WA MALARIA:

- Ugonjwa wa Malaria unasababishwa na umbu wa kike na hupitishwa kwa binadamu kupitia kuumwa na mbu huyu.
- Mbu ambaye hajaathirika wakati anapomuuma mtu aliyeathirika na ugonjwa wa Malaria.
- Maambukizi ya vimelea. Ikiwa mbu atakuuma baadaye anaweza kusambaza vimelea vya ugonjwa wa malaria kwako.
- Kupitia kwa maini. Baada ya kimelea kuingia mwilini mwako anaenda moja kwa moja hadi kwa maini ambapo baadhi yao hukaa kwa muda mrefu.
- Kwa njia ya damu. Baada ya vimelea kukoma hutoka kwa maini na kuambukiza seli nyekundu za damu na huu ndio wakati ambapo mtu huambukizwa na ugonjwa wa Malaria na kuanza kuonyesha dalili za ugonjwa huu.

JINSI YA KUZUIA UGONJWA WA MALARIA

Kama una safari ya kwenda mahali ambapo pana uwezekano mkubwa wa kuambukizwa na ugonjwa wa Malaria unapaswa ujizue kuumwa na mbu. Mbu hujitokeza sana wakati wa jioni hadi alfariji.

Kwa hivyo ili kuzuia kuumwa na mbu unahitaji:

1. Kufunika ngozi yako kwa kuvaa nguo zenye mikono mirefu.
 2. Kujiipaka mafuta ya kufukuza mbu kwenye ngozi au mazingira yako. Baadhi ya mafuta haya ni kama vile DEET, PICARIDIN, au IR3535.
 3. Kulala ndani ya neti iliyotibiwa.
 4. Kupata chanjo. Shirika la Afya Duniani limependekeza kuweko kwa chanjo dhidi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria. Chanjo hii inahitaji itumiwe na watoto ambao wanaishi katika nchi za kitropiki.
1. Ugonjwa wa Malaria husababishwa na nini?
 2. Ugonjwa wa Malaria hupatikana katika maeneo gani?
 3. Maambukizi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria huenea kwa njia gani?
 4. Taja dalili tano za kuonyesha kuwa mtu ana maambukizi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria.
 5. Eleza njia ambazo Shirika la Afya Duniani hutumia kuzuia kuenea kwa ugonjwa wa Malaria.
 6. Watu wangapi huambukizwa na ugonjwa wa Malaria kila mwaka duniani?
 7. Ni mbu wa aina gani ambaye husambaza ugonjwa wa Malaria?
 8. Taja njia tatu za kuzuia kusambaa kwa ugonjwa wa Malaria.



Zoezi S

Watch the video *Mbu Wanakuja!* and write down the main ideas in a few sentences. Compare your summary with a partner to see if you agree. Feel free to modify your sentences based upon your discussions.



tinyurl.com/yc8abkdw

Cultural Explorations

East African governments have accelerated the development of health infrastructure in recent decades, and the majority of people have ready access to modern medicine. In Kenya, for example, more than 80% of the population live only 5km from the nearest health facility. Cities and more urban areas have hospitals with modern infrastructure and specialized doctors. In rural areas, however, there are few well-resourced medical facilities, with most people needing to travel tens of kilometers to access even a small medical clinic. Those requiring specialized care may need to travel for hundreds of kilometers to find a modern hospital.

Medical costs are also an obstacle as most people in East Africa do not have health insurance. There are government sponsored health insurance programs, and some have private health insurance coverage through their employer, but for many the premiums are simply too high to afford. Most hospitals, as such, require a minimum deposit to be admitted, making it impossible for many to get the health services they need. Sometimes, family, friends and communities are forced to sell property or to organize a fundraiser to pay the required admission fees. Government-run hospitals are often cheaper and have lower costs for admitting patients, but they are often under-resourced and do not have the capacity to meet the high demand.

In view of the financial and logistical obstacles to modern medicine, it should not be surprising that a large portion of the population still depends upon herbal remedies and other forms of traditional medicine. Some East Africans, in fact, have a clear preference for traditional medicine as they believe it to be more effective. Herbalists and traditional healers are both commonly referred to as *Waganga wa Kienyeji*. While herbalists create treatments from herbs and other plants, traditional healers rely on the intervention of divine spirits and perform rituals to treat their patients. Given that traditional healers call upon spirits (usually those of dead ancestors) for assistance, they are publicly shunned by East African Christians who believe their practices to be ungodly; yet these same people who condemn these healers publicly often seek assistance from them discreetly.

Some East Africans believe that herbal cures and traditional healers are more effective than modern medicine, especially as traditional healers can provide protection from witchcraft and can cleanse them from curses. Some communities believe in these traditional medicines to such a point that they may delay seeking medical care until it is too late for anything to be done. For

this reason, international organizations in Kenya and Tanzania, like the African Medical and Research Foundation (AMREF), have started partnering with the traditional healers to conduct community outreach programs that urge people to seek a medical diagnosis in a health facility prior to using herbal medicine. In addition to this, the local universities are also partnering with traditional healers in research and setting up of specialization in herbal medicine.

In East Africa, when someone is sick, the family and close friends are expected to show support by visiting the sick person either in the hospital or at home. Visitors are expected to prepare favorite food or drinks, and to bring fruit with them during the visit. The family and friends are expected to eat this food along with the patient (if possible) while reassuring him/her that all will be well. If the patient is admitted to a hospital for a longer stay, people are expected to take turns visiting and taking food. If the hospital policy allows, some families organize a caretaker to support the patient and to provide around-the-clock company for the entirety of the hospital stay. Once the patient is discharged, the family and friends are expected to continue visiting the sick person at home. In many cases, people may also give money to the patient during the visit to help purchase needed medicines or nutritious food to help the patient recover.

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. How does access to medical care in your country compare to that in East Africa?
2. To what degree is access to medical care dependent on the socioeconomic status of people in your country? Is medical care paid for by the government, by private insurers, or is it the responsibility of each individual? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?
3. Are there alternative forms of medical treatment that people in your country seek out either out of economic necessity or personal preference? How are those forms of treatment viewed by more mainstream medical professionals? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?
4. When members of your community get sick are there clear expectations for what friends and family are supposed to do? Does that vary by region and/or socioeconomic status? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?



Zoezi T

After getting her prescription from the pharmacy, Shamila calls the pharmacist to ask more details about the prescription. Listen to her conversation and answer the questions below.

1. Shamila ametumiwa aina ngapi za dawa?
2. Shamila anahitaji kumeza tembe za kupunguza maumivu mara ngapi kwa siku?
3. Dawa za homa ya matumbo ni za rangi gani?
4. Je, Shamila anahitaji kutumia dawa zake kabla au baada ya kula chakula?
5. Shamila anahitaji kuzingatia masharti gani anapotumia dawa?

Sarufi: Amri pendekezi (*Subjunctive mood*)

The subjunctive mood is used for suggestions, commands, giving directions, directives, and asking for things. For monosyllabic verbs, the subjunctive mood is formed by dropping the tense marker (including *-ku*) and changing the final *-a* on the verb to an *-e*.

Unakunywa maji mengi. <i>You drink a lot of water.</i>	→	Unywe maji mengi. <i>You should drink a lot of water.</i>
Alikula kiamshakinywa. <i>He ate breakfast.</i>	→	Ale kiamshakinywa. <i>He should eat breakfast.</i>

For regular verbs, the final vowel changes to *-e*.

Usume kitabu!	<i>You should read a book!</i>
Msume vitabu!	<i>You (pl) should read books!</i>
Upige simu mapema!	<i>You should call early!</i>
Mpige simu mapema!	<i>You (pl) should call early!</i>
Uandike barua pepe!	<i>You should write an email!</i>
Mwandike barua pepe!	<i>You (pl) should write an email!</i>

For borrowed verbs, which in most cases end in a vowel other than *-a*, no change to the final vowel is required.

Ninasafiri zaidi. <i>I travel frequently.</i>	→	Nisafiri zaidi. <i>I should travel frequently.</i>
Ninafikiri polepole. <i>I am thinking slowly.</i>	→	Nifikiri polepole. <i>I should think slowly.</i>
Tunashukuru wazazi wetu. <i>We are grateful to our parents.</i>	→	Tushukuru wazazi wetu. <i>We should be grateful to our parents.</i>
Ujaribu kufanya mazoezi!		<i>You should try to exercise!</i>
Mjaribu kufanya mazoezi!		<i>You (pl) should try to exercise!</i>

- The subjunctive mood is also used to express a desire for others to do something:

Umfundishe Kiswahili.
You should teach her Kiswahili.

Tuwafundishe Kimaasai.
We should teach them the Maasai language.

- There are several constructions that require subjunctive forms to follow them including words that express obligation or compulsion, for instance: *lazima* (must), *ili* (so that), *sharti* (to compel), *bidi* (to require).

Lazima alale mapema.
He must go to bed early.

Soma **iliuelewe**.
Read so that you may understand.

Ukitaka kupata pesa **sharti** ufanye kazi.
If you want money, you should/it compels you to work.

Itaku**bid**i ujifunze Kiswahili ukitaka kwenda Tanzania.
It will compel/require you to study Kiswahili if you want to travel to Tanzania.



Zoezi U

Use the subjunctive mood to tell a friend three to five things they should do when they are sick.

Example:

Ukihisi maumivu ya kichwa unywe maji mengi na upumzike.
If you have a headache, you should drink plenty of water and rest.

Sarufi: Ukanushi wa amri pendekezi (Negation of the subjunctive mood)

The subjunctive is negated by inserting the negative marker *-si* before the root of the subjunctive.

Nilale. <i>I should sleep.</i>	→	Ni si lale. <i>I should not sleep.</i>
Ajaribu kukimbia? <i>Should he/she try to run?</i>	→	Asi si jaribu kukimbia! <i>He/she should not try to run!</i>
Tule. <i>We should eat.</i>	→	Tu si le. <i>We should not eat.</i>
Mzungumze. <i>You (pl) should speak.</i>	→	M si zungumze. <i>You (pl) should not speak.</i>
Nionje. <i>I should taste.</i>	→	Ni si onje. <i>I should not taste.</i>
Ufikiri. <i>You should think.</i>	→	U si fikiri. <i>You should not think.</i>



Zoezi V

Negate the subjunctive verbs in the following sentences.

1. Mtoto alale mapema.
2. Juma anahitaji apike vyakula mbalimbali.
3. Aende mapema sana.
4. Amwambie mwalimu kabla ya muda kutimia.
5. Aandike barua mapema.
6. Ampeleke mtoto kwa mama yake asubuhi.
7. Amchukue mtoto kutoka shuleni jioni.
8. Wasafishe nyumba siku ya jumamosi.
9. Waharibu vitabu vya maktaba.
10. Wapake rangi nyekundu kwenye lango.



Zoezi W

Two of your classmates who share an apartment are sick and a group of friends are planning to bring them food. Discuss what meals you will bring and why those are good choices. You might also talk about food items that one should not bring.



Zoezi X

You are recovering from a recent illness. Write an email to a Swahili-speaking friend describing your symptoms and recounting your experience with the East African medical community.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

baridi cold
bora better
changamfu happy
dhalili; dhaifu hafifu weak
haba lack of
hatari dangerous
joto hot
kali severe
mbaya; mbovu bad state
mgonjwa sickly
muhimu important
nyamavu silent
nzuri good state
tulivu calm

Nouns

bega shoulder
bendeji bandage
chandarua mosquito net
choa skin disease
daktari wa macho optician
daktari wa meno; tabibu wa meno dentist
daktari wa watoto pediatrician
daktari; tabibu; mganga doctor
dawa; tembe; vidonge pill
eksirei; uyoka x-ray
furaha happiness
goti knee
hali ya dharura emergency condition
homa fever
homa ya manjano yellow fever
hospitali hospital
huzuni sadness
jicho eye
jino tooth
kansa; saratani cancer
kichefuchefu nausea
kichwa head
kidakatonge Adam's apple
kidevu chin
kidole cha mguu toe
kidole cha mkono finger
kidonda wound
kifua chest
kifua kikuu tuberculosis
kifundo cha mguu ankle
kikohozi cough

kinga immunity
kionjamchuzi goatee
kipimadamu blood pressure cuff
kipimajoto thermometer
kipindupindu cholera
kisigino heel
kisogo back of the head
kisonono gonorrhea
kisugudi elbow
kisukari diabetes
kitovu navel
kiuno waist
kizunguzungu; kisunzi dizziness
kliniki clinic
koleo scalpel
koo throat
kope eyebrows
kuendesha; kuhara diarrhea
kutapika vomiting
kwapa armpit
maabara laboratory
machela stretcher
mafua cold
mahututi serious (of an illness)
masharubu moustache
maumivu pain
mboni pupil
mdomo mouth
mgongo back
mkono hand
mkunga midwife
muuguzi; nesi nurse
muundi shin
mzio allergies
ndevu beard
ndewe earlobe
ngozi skin
nguvu strength
nyonga wrist
nywele hair
paja thigh
paji forehead
pepopunda tetanus
plasta cast; plaster
pua nose
pumu asthma
sharafa sideburn
shavu cheek
shingo neck
shinikizo la damu hypertension
sikio ear

sindano needle; syringe
tako butt; buttock
taya jaw
tezi tumor
tibakemikali chemotherapy
titi breast
tumbo stomach
tumbo la kuhara dysentery
uchovu fatigue; tiredness
ugonjwa disease; illness; sickness
ukucha nail
ulimi tongue
unyayo sole
unyonge weakness
Upungufu wa Kinga Mwilini (UKIMWI) AIDS
uso face
utapiamlo kwashiorkor (a severe form of malnutrition)
utosi crown of the head
wasiwasi worry
zahanati walk-in clinic

Verbs

-ambukiza to infect
-anguka (chini) to fall (down)
-chechemea to limp
-chemsha to be boil
-dhoofika to deteriorate
-dunga to inject
-kinga; -zuia to prevent
-kufa to die
-meza to swallow pills
-pata to get
-pata kitanda to be admitted
-pata nafuu to get better
-pona to recover; be cured
-pima to measure; to examine
-tapika to vomit
-tibu to treat
-vunja to break (a bone)
-vunjika to be broken
-zirai to faint

Key Phrases

Afya/siha njema. Good health.
Ikiwa ni hali ya dharura enda hospitalini mara moja.
 If it is an emergency condition, go to the hospital immediately.
Inaonekana hali yako imeanza kuwa nzuri.
 It seems your condition is starting to get better.
Je, una bima ya afya? Do you have health insurance?
Makiwa. (My) Condolences.

Maumivu yakizidi umwone daktari. If your pain persists, you should see the doctor.
Nimeze dawa kwa muda gani? How long should I take the medication?
Ninakutakia afueni! I wish you a quick recovery!
Pata nafuu/Ugua pole. Feel better.
Pole kwa ugonjwa! Sorry for the illness!
Poleni kwa msiba Sorry for the loss.
Uko afadhali. You look better.
Umeze dawa pamoja na chakula. You should take the medicine with food.
Unahitaji kumwona daktari. You need to see the doctor.
Unahitaji kupumzika. You need to rest.
Usijali. Utapona! Don't worry. You will recover!

6.2 Mavazi na maumbile



Zoezi A

Shamila and her classmate Fola have been invited along with the other international students to have dinner with the Dean of their college. Read their discussion about what they should wear for this special event and then answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Habari za mchana Fola?

Fola: Nzuri sana Shamila?

Shamila: Nimefurahi sana kupata mwaliko kutoka kwa mkuu wa kitivo.

Fola: Mimi pia. Nina furaha mno kwa kuwa tutapata nafasi ya kukutana na wanafunzi wengine kutoka nchi zingine na pia viongozi wengi wa chuo.

Shamila: Mimi pia. Je, unapanga kuvaa mavazi gani?

Fola: Mwaliko huu ni muhimu. Ninapanga kuvaa blauzi na sketi ya kitenge pamoja na kitambaa chake. Nilishona mavazi haya wiki mbili zilizopita kwa ajili ya mkutano huu. Je, wewe utavaa mavazi gani?

Shamila: Mimi ninapanga kuvaa sketi ndefu, blauzi, na koti ndogo.

Fola: Bila shaka ninajua utapendeza sana.

Shamila: Wewe pia. Sijawahi kukuona umevaa mavazi ya kitenge lakini ninajua unapenda mavazi ya kupendeza. Haya tutaonana baadaye.

Fola: Inshallah.

1. Shamila na Fola wamepata mwaliko wa kuhudhuria chakula cha jioni kutoka kwa nani?
2. Fola anapanga kuvaa mavazi gani?
3. Shamila atavaa mavazi gani?
4. Fola alishona mavazi yake lini?
5. Shamila na Fola wanatazamia kukutana na nani katika hafla hii?
6. Iwapo ungekuwa unaenda kwa hafla hii ungevaa mavazi gani?
7. Unapenda kuvaa mavazi gani?



tisheti



koti



blauzi



gauni



jinsi



sketi



dera



sidiria



hijabu



suruali fupi



suruali ndefu

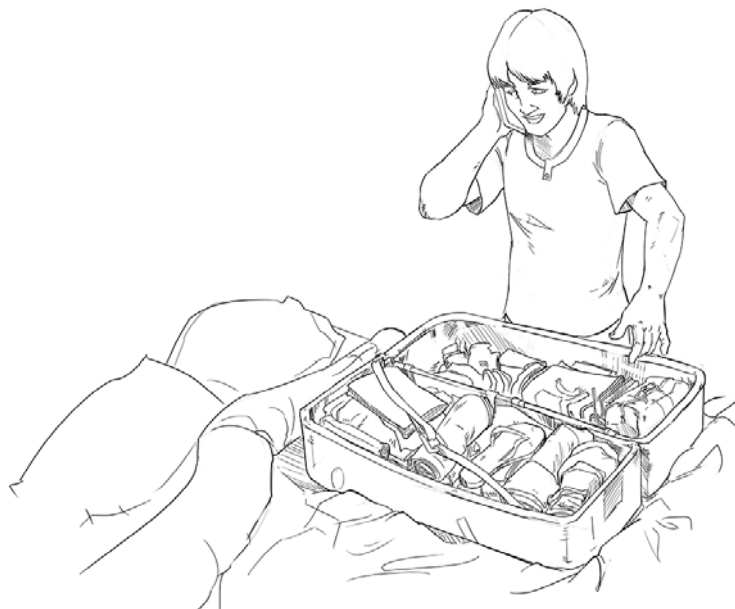


viatu



Zoezi B

Joseph is packing his bag for a four-day trip to a conference in Zanzibar with a group of classmates. While he is packing, one of his classmates calls him to check whether he is ready. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Juma: Habari gani Joseph?

Joseph: Nzuri Juma. Uko vipi?

Juma: Niko salama. Nimemaliza kujitayarisha na ninataka kuondoka. Na wewe je ?

Joseph: Bado ninajiandaa. Ndiyo ninaanza kupanga nguo zangu. Lakini sina uhakika ninahitaji mavazi yapi. Je, umepanga mavazi ya aina gani?

Juma: Kwa sababu ni safari ya siku nne sijabeba nguo nyingi. Nimebeba suruali ndefu mbili, shati mbili na tai mbili. Pia nimebeba suti moja ambayo nitavaa siku ya kuwasilisha. Nimebeba suruali fupi tatu, tisheti tatu, mavazi ya kuogelea na nguo za ndani.

Joseph: Ninaona hujabeba mavazi mengi. Ninafikiri nitabeba suruali ndefu tatu, shati tatu pamoja na tai kwa ajili ya kongamano. Mimi sipendi kuvaa suti kwa hivyo sitabeba suti. Pia nitabeba suruali fupi tatu, tisheti tatu na mavazi ya kuogelea.

Juma: Je, unafikiri unahitaji kubeba angalau koti moja?

Joseph: Kweli kabisa. Nitabeba koti mbili nyepesi. Asante kunikumbusha.

Juma: Karibu. Kwa hivyo utakuwa tayari baada ya muda gani?

Joseph: Nitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika thelathini. Tukutane katika lango kuu la chuo baada ya dakika thelatini.

Based on the above conversation, decide whether the statements below are kweli (true) or si kweli (false). If the statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

1. Joseph na Juma wanapanga safari ya siku nne.
2. Juma hajapanga suti kwa sababu yeye hapendi kuvaa suti.
3. Juma na Joseph wamepanga mavazi ya kuogelea, suruali fupi na tisheti.
4. Joseph atabeba koti mbili nyepesi kwa safari hii.
5. Juma na Joseph watakutana katika lango la chuo kikuu kisha waweze kuanza safari yao.



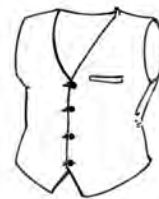
shati



kanzu



suti



vesti



tai



sweta



kofia



mshipi



Zoezi C

Interview two classmates to find out what kinds of clothes they like to wear on weekends versus weekdays. Be as detailed as possible. Be prepared to report back to the class.



Zoezi D

You and your classmates are planning a weekend trip to Mt. Kilimanjaro. Call your classmates and talk about the clothing items you should pack for the trip.



Zoezi E

Shamila was supposed to meet her younger sister at the airport but was delayed at a school event. She calls Joseph to ask if he can pick her up. Read their conversation and complete the activity below.

Shamila: Habari za leo Joseph?

Joseph: Niko salama Shamila, uko vipi?

Shamila: Niko salama kabisa! Ningependa unisaidie kidogo.

Joseph: Sawa, bila shaka ninaweza kukusaidia.

Shamila: Asante sana! Dada yangu Tamara aliyekuwa anasafiri kutoka California jana kama nilivyokueleza atawasili katika uwanja wa ndege baada ya saa mbili. Kwa bahati mbaya siwezi kwenda kumlaki katika uwanja wa ndege kwa sababu ya shughuli za idara ambazo ninaongoza. Ningependa kukuomba uende umlaki katika Uwanja wa Ndege wa Julius Nyerere. Je, unaweza kwenda pamoja na kaka yako Yusufu kumlaki?

Joseph: Hamna neno tutaenda kumlaki Tamara. Nitaenda pamoja na Yusufu ambaye atanielekeza. Je, kati ya Tamara na wewe ni nani ana umri mkubwa?

Shamila: Mimi ni mdogo wake. Tamara ana miaka thelathini na miwili kwa hivyo ni mkubwa wangu kiumri.

Joseph: Sawa. Unaweza kunieleza umbo lake ili niweze kumtambua kwa urahisi kwa sababu hatakuwa na nambari ya simu ya Tanzania.

Shamila: Bila shaka. Yeye ni Mmarekani mweusi kama mimi, kwa hivyo rangi yake ya ngozi ni kahawia kama yangu. Kwa kimo, yeye ana takriban futi tano unusu, kwa hivyo si mfupi wala si mrefu sana, lakini ni mrefu kidogo kunishinda. Pia yeye ni mwembamba. Nywele zake ni nyeusi na ni fupi. Ingawa sijui mapambo aliyoyavaa kwenye safari hii, yeye huwa na kipini kwenye pua lake. Yeye huvaa miwani pia.

Joseph: Asante kwa maelezo hayo mema. Ninafikiri yatanisaidia kumtambua kwa urahisi.

Shamila: Ninafikiri, haitakuwa vigumu kumfahamu kutokana na maumbile yake niliyokueleza.

Joseph: Sawa, tutaonana baadaye. Nitakujulisha iwapo nitakuwa na ugumu wowote wa kumpata Tamara. Kwaheri.

Based on the above conversation, decide whether the statements below are kweli (*true*) or si kweli (*false*). If the statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

1. Tamara ni mkubwa kuliko Shamila kiumri.
2. Tamara ni msichana mfupi sana kwa kimo.
3. Shamila ni mrefu zaidi ya dada yake Tamara.
4. Tamara si mwembamba, yeye ni mnene.

5. Tamara ana nywele nyeusi.
6. Tamara ana nywele ndefu, kwa kuwa hapendi nywele fupi.
7. Rangi ya ngozi ya Tamara si kahawia kama ya dada yake.
8. Tamara ana kipini kwenye pua.
9. Tamara huwa havai miwani.
10. Shamila ataweza kwenda kwa uwanja wa ndege kumlaki dada yake.
11. Joseph na Baraka wataenda uwanja wa ndege kumlaki Tamara.
12. Tamara ana umri wa miaka thelathini na sita.
13. Tamara atampigia Joesph simu akiwasili kwenye uwanja wa ndege.



Zoezi F

Shamila has just arrived in Mwanza to visit Farida's sister Anita, and she is waiting to be picked up at the bus station. Her contact requests her to describe her outfit so she can be able to identify her from the crowd. Listen to Shamila and her contact describing their outfits to each other and answer the following questions.

1. Shamila amesafiri kwenda Mwanza kutoka wapi?
2. Shamila amesimama wapi wakati ambapo anamsubiri Anita?
3. Shamila amevaa mavazi gani?
4. Anita amevaa mavazi gani?
5. Je, Anita amesuka nywele?



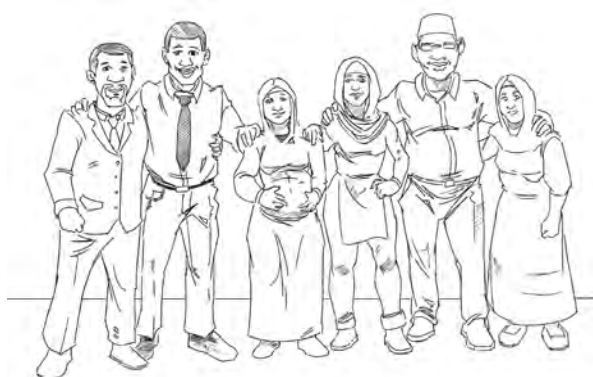
Zoezi G

You are asked to pick up new university students from Tanzania at the airport. You do not know what they look like and are having trouble finding them. Luckily, you have their WhatsApp cellphone numbers. Call the students and find out how they are dressed so that you can identify them.



Zoezi H

Take turns describing the people below in detail. Provide as much detail as you can (gender, age, clothing, and body type) to help your partner identify which person you are describing. Once you have identified the person, work with your partner(s) to expand the description, particularly those elements that distinguish the person from others in the pictures. Some additional vocabulary is provided to help you get started.



chale - tattoo

kijana – young/youth

kionja mchuzi – goatee

kitambi - pot belly

maji ya kunde– brown

masharubu - moustache

mfupi - short

mjamzito – pregnant

mlemavu – disabled

mnene - plump

mpofu – blind

mrefu - tall

mrembo - beautiful

mtanashati – handsome

mwembamba - slender

mweupe – light skinned

mweusi – dark skinned

mzee - old

ndevu - beard

nywele fupi - short hair

nywele ndefu - long hair

sharafa - sideburn

sura mbaya – ugly

umri wa kati - middle-aged

upara - bald

uso duara - round face

uso mrefu - long face

uso wa wajihi - good looking

wastani - average/medium



Zoezi I

Write a detailed description of one of your classmates. Read the description aloud to the class for everyone to guess the person you have described.

Sarufi: Vivumishi vilingalishi (Comparatives)

There are generally two types of comparisons: those that suggest that two things have an equal amount of quality and those that suggest that one thing has a greater/lesser degree of quality.

Here are some examples stressing that two objects are similar:

Joseph ni mwerevu **kama** baba yake.
*Joseph is **as** smart **as** his father.*

Urefu wa Shamila **unalingana na** urefu wa Tamara.
*Shamila's height is **the same as** Tamara's height.*

Suti yangu na ya ndugu yangu ni **sawa kwa** gharama.
*My suit and that of my brother are of **the same** cost.*

Mavazi ya Bibi Farida **yanafanana na** ya binti yake Waridi.
*Ms. Farida's clothes **are similar to** those of her daughter, Waridi.*

Waridi **anamsabihi** mama yake Bibi Farida.
*Waridi **resembles** her mother, Ms. Farida.*

Here are some examples of comparing dissimilar people, objects etc.:

Joseph ni mrefu **kuliko** Shamila.
*Joseph is **taller** than Shamila.*

Dianne ni mwembamba **kushinda** dada yake Shamila.
*Dianne is **more slender** than her sister, Shamila.*

Suti yake ni ghali **zaidi ya** yangu.
*His/her suit is **more** expensive **than** mine.*

Hospitali za kibinafsi nchini Kenya ni **nzuri zaidi ya** hospitali za kiserikali.
*Private hospitals in Kenya are **better** than public hospitals.*

Note that while English often forms comparative adjectives with the suffix *-er*, Kiswahili forms them with the addition of contextual words. The form of the adjective itself remains the same.



Zoezi J

Combine the two sentences to create a single sentence with a comparative. Keep in mind that there may be more than one possible answer.

Examples:

Aisha ni mdogo. Chacha ni ndugu mkubwa wa Aisha.
Aisha ni mdogo kuliko ndugu yake Chacha.
Chacha ni mkubwa kuliko dada yake Aisha.

1. Waridi ni mrefu kwa kimo. Hassan ni mfupi.
2. Gauni ya Bibi. Farida ni ghali. Gauni ya Binti yake Bibi Farida ni ya bei rahisi.
3. Suti ya Joseph ni ya bluu. Suti ya Yusufu ni ya bluu.
4. Nywele za Shamila ni ndefu. Dianne ana nywele fupi.
5. Joseph ana ndevu ndefu. Hassan ana ndevu fupi.

Sarufi: Vivumishi vilinganishi vya kupindukia (*Superlatives*)

In English superlatives are usually formed by adding the *-est* suffix to an adjective (tallest, shortest, smartest, etc.). In Kiswahili they are formed by adding contextual words to an adjective much like we saw with comparatives. But in addition to familiar phrases like *kuliko*, *zaidi ya*, and *kushinda*, superlatives also add the quantifiers *-ote* (all/entire) or *-o-ote* (anyone or anything).

Gauni nyekundu ni ya bei **ghali kuliko** nguo **zote** dukani.

*The red dress is **more expensive than all of the other** clothes in the shop. OR*

*The red dress is the **most expensive** of all the clothes in the shop.*

Juma ni **mrefu zaidi ya** wanafunzi **wote** katika darasa la Kiswahili.

*Juma is **taller than all the other** students in the Kiswahili class. OR*

*Juma is the **tallest** student in the Kiswahili class.*

Soko la Kariakor ni **kubwa kushinda** masoko **yote** katika jiji la Dar es Salaam.

*Kariakoo market is **bigger than all other** markets in Dar es Salaam. OR*

*Kariakoo market is the **biggest** market in Dar es Salaam.*

California ni jimbo **kubwa zaidi ya** majimbo **yoyote** nchini Marekani.

*The state of California is **larger than any other** state in the United States. OR*

*California is the **largest** of all states in the United States.*



Zoezi K

Create sentences with superlatives that build logically upon the cue sentences that you are given. Try to come up with as many logical sentences as you can.

Example:

Ethan ni mwenye mbio.

Ethan ndiye mwanafunzi mwenye mbio zaidi ya wanafunzi wote shuleni.

1. Aisha ni mwanafunzi mzuri.
2. Hasheem Thabeet anacheza mpira wa vikapu.
3. Ndugu yangu ni mchanga.
4. Matunda ya Bibi Juma ni matamu.
5. Ajuma ni mwanamitindo.
6. Diamond Platnumz ni mghani.
7. Safari ya kuja jijini ni ndefu.
8. Bibi yangu anapenda kusafisha nyumba.
9. Elon Musk ni mjasiriamali.
10. Mkulima huyu ni mwenye bidii.



Zoezi L

Work with a partner to come up with a superlative to describe each person in the class. When all the groups are finished, read your answers aloud to see if there is general agreement.



Zoezi M

One afternoon, Shamila and her host mother go shopping as Shamila would like to buy some clothes from the local market. Read her conversation with the seller and answer the questions that follow.

- Mwuzaji:** Karibu sana dada katika duka letu. Tuna mavazi mengi ya aina mbalimbali.
- Shamila:** Asante sana. Kweli ninaona mna mavazi mengi.
- Mwuzaji:** Hapa kuna gauni, suruali ndefu na blauzi za kitenge. Pia kuna aina nyingi za mavazi rasmi na yasiyo rasmi ya wanawake. Kwa mavazi rasmi kuna suti za suruali ndefu and suti za sketi. Pia kuna sketi, suruali ndefu, blauzi, gauni na koti.
- Shamila:** Mimi ningependa mavazi yasiyo rasmi. Ninapanga kuhudhuria sherehe ya harusi ya rafiki yangu kwa hivyo ningependa gauni au sketi na blauzi ya kitenge.
- Mwuzaji:** Kuna vitenge vya aina nyingi. Njoo nikuonyeshe. Hapa kuna blauzi na sketi na upande ule kuna gauni mbalimbali. Je, unapenda rangi gani?
- Shamila:** Ningependa sketi na blauzi. Ninapenda rangi za manjano na kijani.
- Mwuzaji:** Safi. Kuna miundo miwili ya kitenge yenye rangi za manjano na kijani. Moja ni yenye sketi ndefu na nyingine ni ya sketi fupi. Unaweza kujipima miundo yote miwili. Ninafikiri hii itakufaa.
- Shamila:** Miundo hii yote inapendeza. Wacha nijipime.
- (Shamila goes to the fitting room and comes back after 5 minutes.)*
- Mwuzaji:** Umependa ile ndefu au fupi? Miundo yote miwili inakufaa vizuri?
- Shamila:** Nimependa hii ndefu. Ina kimo kizuri na rangi yake inapendeza mno. Bibi Farida pia anadhani hii ni nzuri zaidi kuliko ile nyingine.
- Mwuzaji:** Ninakubaliana nanyi. Muundo huu ni mzuri kwa umbo lako na rangi pia zinapendenza mno.
- Shamila:** Je, unauzaje?
- Mwuzaji:** Blauzi na sketi pamoja ni shilingi elfu hamsini na mia tano.
- Shamila:** Ala! Mbona unauza bei ghali hivyo?
- Mwuzaji:** Hiyo si bei ghali. Kitambaa cha nguo hii ni kizuri sana na kitadumu kwa muda mrefu. Rangi yake haivuji. Utaifurahia.
- Shamila:** Tafadhali punguza bei kidogo.

Mwuzaji: Bei ya mwisho ni shilingi elfu arobaini na nane na mia nne.

Shamila: Sawa. Pesa ndizo hizi.

Mwuzaji: Karibu sana. Ungependa kitu kingine? Kuna kitambaa ambacho kinaambatana na nguo hii.

Shamila: La, kwa leo tutachukua nguo hii tu. Tutarudi wakati mwingine.

1. Shamila anapenda rangi gani?
2. Shamila alinunua mavazi gani?
3. Mwuzaji alimwuzia Shamila mavazi kwa shilingi ngapi?
4. Mwuzaji alisema mavazi hayo yana ubora gani?
5. Je, Shamila alinunua kitu kingine kutoka kwa mwuzaji?
6. Ungekuwa Shamila ungenunua mavazi gani kutoka kwa mwuzaji na kwa nini?



Zoezi N

Joseph is shopping for some clothes to wear during his internship in the Department of Languages and Literature at the University of Dar es Salaam. Listen to his conversation with the salesperson and answer the following questions.

1. Joseph angependa kununua mavazi gani?
2. Joseph amechagua suruali ndefu za rangi gani?
3. Joseph amechagua shati za rangi gani?
4. Kwa nini Joseph alihitaji kurudi dukani siku inayofuata?
5. Mavazi ambayo Joseph ameyanunua yametoka nchi gani?
6. Kwa jumla Joseph alimlipa mwuzaji pesa ngapi?
7. Joseph anatarajia kupokea shati lake mwendo wa saa ngapi?

Sarufi: Vivumishi viulizi (*Interrogatives*)

Throughout the book, we have seen interrogatives like *nani* (who), *nini* (what), *wapi* (where), and *gani* (which or what kind/sort of).

- Jina lako ni **nani**?
- Wewe unakula **nini**?
- Unatoka **wapi**?
- Wewe unapenda chakula **gani**?

In this unit, we will learn more details about interrogatives.

- **Lini** (when) is used to ask questions that inquire about the time when an act takes place. It appears where the answer is placed.

Utakuja Florida lini ?	<i>When will you come to Florida?</i>
Nitakuja Florida mwezi wa Desemba.	<i>I will come to Florida in December.</i>
Utaenda nyumbani lini ?	<i>When will you go home?</i>
Nitaenda nyumbani jioni.	<i>I will go home in the evening.</i>

- **Ngapi** (how many) is only used with plural nouns and the answer must be a number. The noun marker is usually attached to the interrogative *-ngapi*. It is placed after the noun and agrees with the noun class marker.

Una miaka mingapi?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Nina miaka thelathini na miwili.	<i>I am thirty-two years old.</i>
Utanunua gauni ngapi ?	<i>How many dresses will you buy?</i>
Nitanunua gauni nne.	<i>I will buy four dresses.</i>

- **-pi** (where/which one) are expressed by attaching *-pi* to the noun. It modifies both singular and plural forms and varies according to the noun class.

Ni mtoto yupi analala?	<i>Which child is sleeping?</i>
Unapenda matunda yapi?	<i>Which fruits do you like?</i>
Ni chakula kipi kilipikwa.	<i>Which food was cooked?</i>

- **Nani** (who) is only used to inquire about people.

Jina lako ni nani ?	<i>What is your name?</i>
Kaka yako anaitwa nani ?	<i>What is your brother's name?</i>
Mbwa aliletwa na nani ?	<i>Who brought the dog?</i>

- **Wapi** (where) is used to inquire about places.

Wewe unaishi wapi ?	<i>Where do you live?</i>
Wewe unaenda wapi sasa?	<i>Where are you going now?</i>
Wewe unatoka wapi ?	<i>Where do you come from?</i>

- **Nini** (what) is used to inquire about things that are being done or will be done.

Wewe unakula nini ?	<i>What are you eating?</i>
Utafanya nini baada ya darasa?	<i>What will you do after class?</i>
Wewe unaandika nini ?	<i>What are you writing?</i>

- **Gani** (which/what sort/kind) is used to inquire about specific things and its meaning varies depending on the context.

Unatoka nchi **gani**?

Which country do you come from?

Unasoma masomo **gani**?

What subjects are you studying?

Unasoma kitabu **gani**?

Which book are you reading?

- **-je** (how), is usually affixed to the verb that adds the meaning what/how.

Utakuj**aje** nyumbani?

How will you come home?

Utalip**aje** nauli?

How will you pay the fare?

Utaosh**aje** nguo zako?

How will you wash your clothes?

- **Na wewe je** (how about you) is used to inquire about the other person.

Ninakwenda mkahawani. **Na wewe je**? *I am going to the restaurant. How about you?*

Tulifika jana. **Na nyinyi je**?

We arrived yesterday. How about you ?

Ninasoma historia. **Na wewe je**?

I am studying history. How about you?

- **Kwa nini** or **mbona** (why) is used to seek reasons for doing something.

Kwa nini unasoma Kiswahili?

Why are you studying Kiswahili?

Mbona uliondoka darasani mapema?

Why did you leave class early?

Kwa nini unataka kazi?

Why do you want a job?

Mbona hamkumwalika Amina?

Why didn't you invite Amina?

- **Kwa sababu gani** (for what reason) also inquires about the reason for doing things.

Kwa sababu gani wewe hucheleva kila siku?

For what reason are you usually late everyday?

Unapenda mwalimu wako **kwa sababu gani**?

For what reason do you like your teacher?

Kwa sababu gani huli nyama?

For what reason do you not eat meat?



Zoezi O

Use the correct forms of the interrogatives *-ngapi*, *-gani* and *-pi* to fill in the blanks below. Pay careful attention to the context and the specific noun class of the given interrogative.

1. Unafikiri ni shati _____ ninaweza kununua na shilingi elfu kumi za Kenya?
2. Ni pahali _____ tunaweza kupata mavazi tunayohitaji kwa ajili ya harusi kwenye soko la Makumbusho?
3. Ungependa kununua koti _____ kati ya hili ya rangi ya bluu na lile la rangi ya manjano?
4. Ni gauni _____ litavaliwa na wazazi wa Bibi harusi.
5. Ungependa nikuletee mikufu _____ nitakapoenda sokoni kesho?
6. Unaenda _____ sasa?
7. Kesho wageni watakuja saa _____?
8. Viti _____ vimevunjika?
9. Mtoto _____ ni mgonjwa?
10. Dada yako ana miaka _____?



Zoezi P

Joseph receives the package from the Jambo shop the day after his shopping trip. When he opens the package, he discovers that they have sent the wrong shirt (not the selected size and color), and the package also includes pants. Pretend that you are Joseph and call the customer service line to discuss the issues with your order.



Zoezi Q

Browse the *Amore!* online clothing site and select a few items that you might like to purchase.

Then, create a photo collage of the clothing items with a brief description and an explanation of why you chose each item. Be ready to respond to your classmates' questions about your selections.



amore.co.ke



Zoezi R

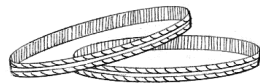
Pick your favorite and least favorite accessories from the pictures. Then, using the questions below, ask two classmates what their favorite and least favorite accessories are. Be ready to explain your choices.

Wewe unapenda kuvaa mapambo gani?

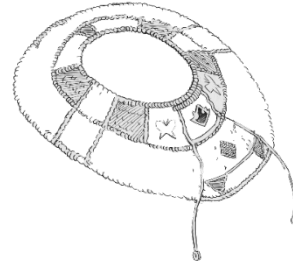
Wewe hupendi kuvaa mapambo gani?



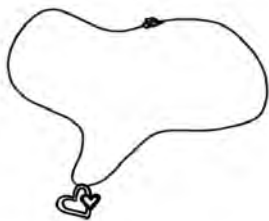
miwani



bangili



Ushanga



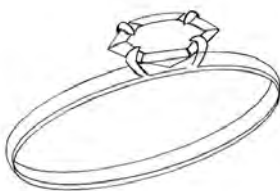
kidani



saa ya mkono



Marashi



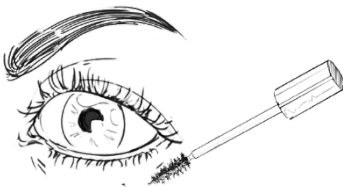
pete



hereni



chanjo/nembo



wanja



hina



Begi



Zoezi S

Work with a partner to describe the clothing and accessories of the students below. Make sure to include comparatives and superlatives in your description. Be ready to share your description with the class.

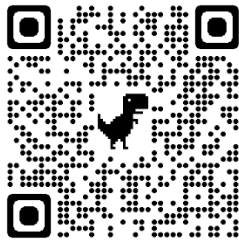


Cultural Exploration

Different cultures perceive the concept of beauty differently. In East and Central Africa where Swahili is widely spoken, a woman's value is measured in terms of her kindness and her overall character. A taarab song released by Tanzanian artist, Mwanahawa Ali, entitled *Mwanamke hulka*, which literally means a woman's character, recognizes the essence of a woman's values as more important than how beautiful she looks, and the need to be both respectful and respectable. Previous artists such as Samba Mapangala from Congo have propelled the same notion in their music. In his song “*Marina*,” Samba says “*uzuri wa mwanamke sio urembo ni tabia*” (the goodness of a woman is not beauty but her character).

Beauty is a concept that is normally associated with women rather than men among traditional Swahili speakers and historically has been synonymous to being plump. A man with a slender wife would often be advised to feed her so that she would become plump and healthy. A woman of good character was also expected to not display her body publicly by wearing revealing or tight-fitting clothing. For this reason, Muslim women on the coast of East Africa who cover their body and hair, and wear a hijab, and a loose long dress referred to as *buibui*, are still widely perceived as beautiful. East African women of older generations often take it upon themselves to urge younger women they see in public to be more traditional in their dress. It is believed that a woman's character, kindness, and other key values are passed on to her children, so they must be very carefully cultivated.

The western concept of beauty is increasingly taking root among Swahili speakers due to the prevalence of movies, television, and social media. Fashion models are almost exclusively slender girls that wear more revealing western-style clothing. Globalization has also led many to see lighter skin as a necessary component of beauty. The increased use of chemical skin lighteners, which are common in many parts of the world, is becoming a major social concern both because of their dangerous health effects and the psychological pressure on those with darker complexions to use them. Watch the speech by actress Lupita Nyong'o linked below to get her perspective on the issue.



tinyurl.com/2x4zy9ak



Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. How does the notion of beauty in your culture compare to East Africa?
2. To what extent has the notion of beauty from other cultures influenced and informed changes in terms of how people perceive beauty in your culture? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?
3. What is the culture of dress code among different subgroups of people in your cultures? What are the motivations behind the dress codes? How have they changed/evolved over time? How does this situation compare to East Africa?



Zoezi T

Shamila and Joseph are planning to go to the Maasai Market over the weekend to buy some souvenirs for their family members and friends. Before they go, they talk about the gifts they would like to buy. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Vipi Joseph? Habari za mchana?

Joseph: Salama Shamila. Ninafurahi kwa sababu wiki hii inakaribia kuisha. Nimekuwa na kazi nyingi sana.

Shamila: Mimi pia ninapanga kwenda kwa soko la wazi la Maasai kama tulivyokubaliana mwanzoni mwa wiki.

Joseph: Mimi pia. Ninafahamu kuwa soko hili ni maarufu sana.

(Joseph shows Shamila details of the market on his phone)

Ninaona hapa kuwa soko hili linajulikana kwa michoro, mapambo, mavazi, michongo ya mbao na vikapu vya Kiafrika.

Shamila: Kweli soko hili ni maarufu sana. Ningependa kununua zawadi chache kwa rafiki na familia yangu. Nitawanunulia dada zangu pamoja na mama yangu shanga, hereni, bangili, na mikoba. Ninafikiri watapenda mavazi ya kitenge. Nitanunua gauni nzuri za kuvaa msimu wa joto.

Joseph: Hizo ni zawadi nzuri mno. Ninafikiri watazifurahia zawadi hizi. Je, utawanunulia zawadi gani kaka yako na baba yako?

Shamila: Kaka yangu anapenda vidani vya kipekee. Kwa hivyo nitamnunulia bangili, kidani na shati la kitenge. Baba yangu nitamnunulia shati, na mshipi. Yeye hapendi kuvaa mapambo. Je wewe unapanga kununua zawadi gani?

Joseph: Nitanunua mapambo mengi kwa familia na rafiki zangu na pia nitanunua vitu vya kisanaa. Mapambo ambayo yametengenezwa kwa shanga huvutia sana. Kwa hivyo nitanunua bangili, udodi, furungu, hereni, kwa dada zangu. Zawadi za wanaume zitakuwa vibeti, na mishipi. Wazazi wangu wanapenda michoro. Nitanunua michoro kadhaa inayoangazia hali ya maisha katika Afrika Mashariki. Pia nitanunua michongo ya wanyama ya kupamba nyumba na ofisi.

Shamila: Inaonekana utanunua zawadi nyingi nzuri. Mimi pia ningependa kununua vifaa vya kisanaa na vitu vya mapambo kama michongo na kadhalika lakini nitavinunua tukikaribia kusafiri kurudi Marekani.

Joseph: Una mipango mizuri. Mimi siwezi kuhifadhi hela kwa muda huo wote ninahofia nitazitumia kwa vitu vingine. Kwa hivyo, itanibidi nizinunue zawadi zangu sasa.

Shamila: Ninafikiri huo ni uamuzi mzuri.

Joseph: Sawa basi tutaonana Jumamosi mwendo wa saa nne kamili asubuhi. Nitakuja nyumbani kwenu kukuchukua.

Shamila: Tutaonana Jumamosi asubuhi inshallah.

Based on the above conversation, decide whether the statements below are kweli (*true*) or si kweli (*false*). If the statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

1. Joseph na Shamila watakwenda sokoni siku ya Jumapili.
2. Kaka ya Shamila hapendi vidani.
3. Shamila na Joseph watawanunulia dada zao na rafiki zao mavazi sawa.
4. Joseph atanunua sanaa za michoro na michongo wakati wa kurudi Marekani ukikaribia.
5. Baba ya Shamila anapenda mapambo.
6. Joseph ana uwezo wa kuhifadhi hela kwa muda mrefu.
7. Joseph na Shamila watakutana kwenye soko la Mwembe Tayari mchana.
8. Joseph na Shamila karibu waondoke kurudi Marekani.



Zoezi U

During your study abroad, you decide to go to a local open-air market to buy some new clothes as the ones you brought with you are now a bit worn out. Make a shopping list of the items you would like to buy. Once at the market, select the clothing items you would like to buy and haggle the price with the seller.

Sarufi: Virejeshi nomino/majina (*Direct and indirect objects*)

A direct object is a noun (or noun phrase) that receives the action of the verb. The indirect object is a noun (or noun phrase) that is impacted by the action of the verb, typically as a recipient of the direct object. Consider the following examples in English:

I read a book.

I read the child a book.

In both sentences the word “book” is the direct object. In the second sentence “child” is the indirect object.

The presence of an indirect object in Kiswahili is indicated on the verb by a prefix just before the root. That prefix agrees with the noun class of the indirect object.

Nili**m**somea **mtoto** kitabu.

I read the child a book.

Nili**w**somea **watoto** kitabu.

*I read the **children** a book.*

Nili**w**anunulia **wazazi** wangu zawadi ya gari.

*I bought my **parents** a car as a present.*

As you may have noticed, the ending on the verb form also changes if an indirect object is present. If the vowel in the syllable preceding the ending is **o** or **e** (such as in **soma** and **leta**), the letter **e** is added to the ending thus creating verbs (some**ea** and le**tea**). If the vowel in the syllable preceding the ending is **a**, **i** or **u** (for instance in **nunua**), the letter **i** is added to the ending; in cases where the root ends in two vowels (like **nunua**), an extra **l** may be added to break up the string of vowels, resulting in the verb **nunulia**.

The indirect object follows immediately after the verb and before the direct object. It can, however, be left out of the sentence if it is clear from context.

Nilimsomea kitabu.

*I read (to) **him/her** the book.*

Niliwanunulia gari.

*I bought (for) **them** a car.*

Nilimpikia chakula.

*I cooked (for) **him/her** food.*



Zoezi V

Complete the following table by providing the appropriate pronoun marker and an example sentence using the pronoun marker with the verb provided. Pay careful attention that you use the correct indirect object prefix and underline the direct object. The first sentence has been provided as an example.

Subject Pronoun	Pronoun Marker	Verb root	Sentence
mimi (I)	ni-	-soma	Mimi ninawasomea vitabu hivi. <i>I am reading these books to them.</i>
wewe (you; singular)		-pika	
yeye (he/she)		-lima	
sisi (we/us)		-nunua	
nyinyi (you; plural)		-imba	
wao (they/them)		-andika	



Zoezi W

Poll your classmates about what they would like to buy their family members for the upcoming holiday. Be prepared to share your poll results with the class.



Zoezi X

You will be completing your study abroad trip in Tanzania within the next month. Before you travel back home, you would like to buy souvenirs for your friends and family members at a local open-air market. Remember to haggle with the sellers to get the best price for the items.



Zoezi Y

Find a picture of your family or some fictional family and describe them in as much detail as you can. You will want to include a general physical description (tall/short, old/young, etc.). and a description of the clothing they are wearing. To fill out the description, provide other interesting facts to give us a better sense of who they are (profession, age, hobbies, etc.). Write at least three to four large paragraphs.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

angavu	dry
bana	tight
bora	better; suitable
chache	a few; some
chafu	dirty
-dogo	small
fupi	short
geni; -pya	new
ghali	expensive
giza	dark
-ingi	a lot; many
kavu	dry
kigeni	foreign
kipekee	unique
-kubwa	big
kuu kuu; zee	old
laini; nyororo	smooth; soft
legalega	loose
mpya	new
mwangaza	light
nadra	rare
ndefu	long
ngumu	rough
nyepesi	light
nzito	heavy
pana	wide
rahisi	cheap
rangi rangi	multicolored
safi; nadhifu	clean; nice; smart
tele	plenty; abundant
uwazi	transparent
wazi	open
-zee	old
zima	whole
-zuri	good

Nouns

bangili	bangle
barghasia; bulibuli	white embroidered Islamic hat
begi	bag
buibui	cloth worn by a Muslim woman
buti	boot
bwelasuti; ovaroli; surupwenye	overalls
chale	incision on the body
chanjo; nembo	tattoo
chupi	underpants
fulana; tisheti	t-shirt

furungu anklet
gaguro short petticoat
glovu glove
hazama tongue ring
hina henna
hijabu veil worn by a Muslim woman
jini; jinsi jeans
kabuti long coat
kamisi; shimizi; shumizi petticoat; short slip
kanchiri; sidiria brassiere
kanga; leso cotton cloth with four borders
kaniki a black mourning dress; apron
kaptula; suruali fupi shorts
kiatu shoes
kibeti wallet; purse
kichana comb
kidani necklace
kikoi loin cloth
kikuba necklace
kikuku decoration for the arm
kilemba turban
kipini nose pin
kipuli; hereni earring
kitambaa headscarf
kitenge African print cloth
kizibau vest
kofia cap; hat
koti coat
koti la kuogea bathrobe
mapambo decorations
marashi cologne; perfume
mavazi; nguo cloth; clothes
mavazi ya kike women's clothing
mavazi ya kiume men's clothing
miwani glasses
mkufu ornamental chain
mshipi belt
ndonya upper lip plug
ngeu red ochre
njuga ankle bells
nyerere copper or brass bangle
pambo decoration
patipati slippers
pete ring
rinda; gauni dress; gown
saa ya mkono wristwatch
shali shawl
shati shirt
shuka bed sheet
sketi skirt
soksi socks

suruali	pants
suti	suit
sweta	sweater
tai	tie
ubani	incense
utandio	scarf
wanja	eyeliner

Key Phrases

Ethan ni mtanashati. Ethan is handsome.

Jane ni mrembo. Jane is beautiful.

Je, ninaweza kujipima mavazi haya? Can I try on these clothes?

Mapambo na sanaa za kutoka Afrika Mashariki zinapendeza.

Accessories and artwork from East Africa are attractive.

Mavazi niliyoyanunua ni madogo. The clothes that I bought are small.

Mavazi niliyoyanunua yananifaa vizuri. The clothes that I bought fit me well.

Vazi lake linapendeza. His/her outfit is nice.

Msichana yule ni mrefu na mwembamba. That girl is tall and slender.

Sanaa za kutoka Afrika Mashariki hutengenezwa kwa mikono.

Artworks from East Africa are handmade.

Sanaa za kutoka Afrika Mashariki ni za bei nafuu.

East African artworks are affordable.

Unauza aina gani ya mapambo? What kind of accessories are you selling?

Vazi lako linapendeza. Your outfit is lovely.

Vazi la rangi rangi. A multicolored cloth.

Wewe unapenda mapambo gani? Which accessories do you like?

Yeye ana umbo nzuri. He/she has a nice physical appearance.

Yeye ni mchanga. He/she is young/youthful.

Yeye ni mzee sana. He/she is very old.

6.3 Leo hali ya hewa iko vipi?



Zoezi A

Before Shamila leaves the house, she checks the weather app on her phone and talks to Mrs. Farida about the weather so that they can effectively plan their activities. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Kuna baridi.



Kuna joto kiasi.



Kuna joto jingi.



Kuna mawingu.



Kuna mawingu kiasi.



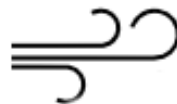
Kuna jua.



Kuna mvua.



Kuna radi.



Kuna upepo.

Shamila: Shikamoo Bibi Farida. Umeamka vizuri?

Farida: Marahaba mwanangu. Nimeamka vizuri. Je, wewe ulilala vizuri?

Shamila: Nililala vizuri ijapokuwa kulikuwa na baridi kali usiku.

Farida: Ungeniambia nikupe blanketi nyingine. Huu ni msimu wa baridi kwa hivyo kuna baridi mno wakati wa usiku na alfajiri.

Shamila: Wacha niangalie hali ya hewa itakuwa vipi leo.

Farida: Kulingana na utabiri wa hali ya hewa, leo kutakuwa na vipindi vifupi vya jua asubuhi, mawingu mengi, na mwendo wa alasiri kutakuwa na mvua nyingi na ngurumo za radi.

Shamila: Huu ni msimu wa masika na kwa kawaida huwa na mvua nyingi. Wiki hii yote kumekuwa na mvua nyingi sana. Kwa hivyo, nitajaribu nimalize shughuli chuoni mapema ili nirudi nyumbani kabla ya alasiri. Sipendi kuwa barabarani baada ya mvua kunyesha kwa kuwa huwa na msongamano mkubwa wa magari.

Farida: Hakikisha umebeba mwavuli kwa sababu utauhitaji ili usinyeshewe na mvua. Pia vaa koti au jaketi nzuri la kukusitiri na baridi.

Shamila: Ndiyo, nina mwavuli mdogo ndani ya mkoba wangu na nitavaa jaketi nzito la baridi. Je, wewe utafanya nini leo siku yako ya mapumziko?

Farida: Nilitaka kufua nguo zetu lakini kwa sababu mvua itanyesha mapema sitafua leo. Nitaenda shambani kukagua kazi inavyoendelea. Wafanyakazi wanapalilia mahindi na kupanda mboga. Nitaenda sokoni kununua mbegu za mchicha, sukumawiki, vitunguu na viazi.

Shamila: Kila la heri. Ninaona una shughuli nyingi muhimu ili kukahikisha mazao yako ni mazuri. Wikendi hii ninapanga kuwasaidia na kazi za shambani.

Farida: Hamna neno tunashukuru.

1. Hali ya hewa jijini Dar es Salaam iko vipi leo?
2. Shamila atavaa maavazi gani leo?
3. Kwa nini Shamila atabeba mwavuli?
4. Shamila anapanga kurudi nyumbani saa ngapi? Eleza kwa nini?
5. Bibi Farida ana shughuli gani siku hii?
6. Kwa nini Bibi Farida atanunua mbegu za mchicha, sukumawiki, vitunguu na viazi?
7. Je, leo Bibi Farida ataenda kazini?
8. Shamila anapanga kufanya nini wikendi?
9. Kama ungekuwa Shamila, ungemsaidia Bibi Farida vipi wakati wa wikendi?
10. Wakati wa msimu wa masika wewe hupenda kufanya nini?

Sarufi: kuna (*Expressing “there is”*)

Kiswahili expresses weather conditions as nouns and not as adjectives as English.

It is important to note that if we are talking about the weather, the use of **kuna** (*there is*) is essential. **Kuna** is used in the present tense to denote *there is*, **kumekuwa na** is used in the present perfect tense to denote *there has been*, **kulikuwa na** is used in the past tense to denote *there was*, and **kutakuwa na** is used in the future tense to denote *there will be*.

Kuna mvua nyingi leo.

There is a lot of rain today.

Kumekuwa na baridi leo asubuhi.

It has been cold this morning.

Kulikuwa na mawingu mengi jana mchana.

It was so cloudy yesterday afternoon.

Kutakuwa na theluji kesho.

There will be snow tomorrow.

Here are some examples of the negated forms if you are talking about weather.

Kuna baridi.

It is cold.

Hakuna baridi.

It is not cold.

Kumekuwa na mvua.

It has been raining.

Hakujakuwa na mvua.

It has not been raining.

Kutakuwa na upepo mkali kesho.

It will be so windy tomorrow.

Hakutakuwa na upepo mkali kesho.

It will not be so windy tomorrow.



Zoezi B

Use the phrases provided to fill in the blanks in the sentences that follow.

hakujakuwa na	sitakuwa na	kutakuwa na	hutakuwa na
kuna	kutokuwa na	kumekuwa na	
kulikuwa na	watakuwa na	atakuwa na	hakuna

1. Bwana Juma _____ kofia la rangi jeupe na kanzu ndefu siku ya Ijumaa atapokuwa akisherehekea sikukuu ya Ramadhani.
2. _____ suti kesho ingawa ninajua watu wengi _____ mavazi rasmi kwenye sherehe hii.
3. Usipobeba koti na sweta _____ nguo za kukuzuia baridi.
4. Jana _____ mvua kubwa na ngurumo za radi kwa hivyo hatukuweza kuogelea baharani.
5. Leo hali ya hewa ni tulivu, nimefurahia kuwa _____ upepo mkali kama ilivyokuwa jana.
6. _____ kofia na miwani unapoenda kwenye ufukweni kunaweza kufanya uchomeke na jua kali.
7. Leo _____ mvua kwa hivyo watoto wamecheza nje kwa muda mrefu.
8. Leo _____ joto sana utahitaji kuvaa mavazi mepesi.
9. _____ wanafunzi wengi uwanjani.
10. Kesho _____ kimbunga kwenye jimbo la Florida.
11. John _____ muda mwingi baada ya kumaliza kazi ya nyumbani.



Zoezi C

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate form of kuna.

1. Jana _____ baridi nyingi na mawingu kiasi.
2. Kesho asubuhi _____ mvua nyingi.

3. Jana _____ upepo.
4. Kesho _____ theluji.
5. Leo _____ joto kali.
6. Jioni _____ dhoruba.



Zoezi D

Joseph is planning some activities for a three-day weekend with one of his classmates. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Vipi Juma? Uhali gani?

Juma: Niko salama labda wewe?

Joseph: Niko salama pia. Je, unapanga kufanya nini wakati wa likizo?

Juma: Nilikuwa nimepanga kucheza kandanda chuoni. Lakini hali ya hewa si nzuri sana. Inaonekana kutakuwa na mvua nyingi na ngurumo za radi.

Joseph: Ninapendekeza leo jioni tutazame filamu. Kuna filamu mpya ambayo inaonyeshwa katika sinema, ninafikiri utaipenda.

Juma: Bila shaka twende kwenye sinema leo.

Joseph: Je, leo, kesho na kesho kutwa hali ya hewa itakuwaje?

Juma: Leo jioni kunaweza kunyesha kwa kuwa kuna upepo mkali. Kesho mvua haitanyesha lakini kutakuwa na mawingu na upepo mwingi. Kwa hivyo hatutaweza kwenda pwani kesho. Kesho kutwa vilevile kutakuwa na mvua nyepesi, mawingu na vipindi vichache vya mvua.

Joseph: Kweli huu ni msimu wa masika. Unafikiri tutaweza kuwa na burudani gani siku ya Jumamosi na Jumapili?

Juma: Siku ya Jumamosi tutaweza kwenda kuhudhuria sherehe za kitaifa katika uwanja wa michezo wa Kigoma. Kutakuwa na burudani safi katika sherehe hiyo, nyimbo, dansi, michezo ya kuigiza na kadhalika.

Joseph: Hilo ni wazo nzuri sana. Ninatumai nitajifunza mengi kuhusu historia ya Tanzania.

Juma: Bila shaka. Siku ya jumapili tutaweza kuzuru makavazi ya Arusha Declaration. Sipendi msimu wa masika kwa sababu huwa siwezi kufanya vitu vingi. Pia sipendi baridi na hali ya hewa yenye mawingu mengi bila jua.

Joseph: Mimi ninapenda msimu wa masika kwa sababu sipendi joto. Hupenda pia kufanya vitu vingi ndani ya nyumba na kuwa mbunifu. Inaonekana tuna shughuli nyingi za kufanya likizo hii.

1. Juma na Joseph wana likizo ya siku ngapi?
2. Je, Juma na Joseph watacheza kandanda leo?

3. Hali ya hewa iko vipi siku hii?
4. Hali ya hewa itakuwaje siku ifuatayo?
5. Juma na Joseph watafanya nini siku ya Jumamosi?
6. Juma na Joseph watanya nini siku ya Jumapili?
7. Joseph anapenda majira gani?
8. Juma anapenda majira gani?
9. Wewe unapenda majira gani?
10. Kutegemea hali ya hewa unapanga kufanya nini wikendi hii?



Zoezi E

You and a friend are planning to go on a hike this weekend and need to figure out the best day to go. Look at the weather forecast and discuss your options. As time permits you might also discuss what clothing you should wear and any food or drinks that you might bring along.



Zoezi F

Joseph is planning to go out to support Mr. Bakari who is doing some field work activities. They want to go and interview a few teachers in a local primary school in the afternoon. Joseph calls Mr. Bakari early in the morning to check on his plans for the day. Read their conversation and answer the questions below.

Joseph: Shikamoo mwalimu Bakari? U hali gani?

Bakari: Marahaba Joseph. Niko salama na wewe je?

Joseph: Niko salama. Samahani nimekupigia simu mapema sana. Je, nimekuamsha?

Bakari: Hamna neno.

Joseph: Ningependa kukumbusha kuwa tuna miadi leo ya kufanya mahojiano katika shule ya msingi ya Maua.

Bakari: Asante sana kwa kunikumbusha. Je, hali ya anga namna gani leo? Tunahitaji kufanya mahojiano na kuchukua video uwanjani.

Joseph: Wacha niangalie darubini ya hali ya hewa. Nipe dakika moja. Inaonekana leo kuna vipindi vya jua na mawingu kiasi saa za asubuhi.

Kutakuwa na mvua nyingi sana na ngurumo za radi mwendo wa alasiri. Ninafikiri itakuwa vema twende saa za asubuhi.

Bakari: Ninakubaliana na mawazo yako. Ni vema tumalize shughuli za mahojiano kabla ya mvua kunyesha. Kwa hivyo tunaweza kuondoka kutoka kwenye idara saa tatu kamili asubuhi.

Joseph: Ndiyo. Nitakuwa ofisini mwako kabla ya saa tatu asubuhi. Hakikisha umebeba mikoba ya kubebea vifaa vya utafiti. Ni lazima tuvikinge na mvua.

Bakari: Bila shaka nitaibeba mikoba hiyo. Tuonane hivi karibuni.

1. Joseph na Bakari wana mipango gani leo?
2. Hali ya anga iko namna gani leo?
3. Bakari na Joseph wanapanga kufanya mahojiano yao saa ngapi?
4. Joseph anahitaji kubeba vifaa gani?
5. Joseph na Bakari wataondoka saa ngapi?
6. Kwa nini Joseph anahitaji kubeba mikoba?



Zoezi G

You are calling to check in on one of your friends who lives in East Africa. By coincidence, each of you is feeling a bit sick because of the weather where you are. Discuss the weather and the symptoms that you have.



Zoezi H

Read the weather forecast below and answer the questions that follow.

Hali ya hewa wiki hii ni nzuri. Kutoka Ijumaa hadi siku ya Jumatatu kutakuwa na mawingu kiasi na vipindi vya jua. Hali joto ya juu itakuwa nyuzi ishirini na sita na hali joto ya chini itakuwa nyuzi kumi na tatu. Siku ya Jumanne na Jumatano kutakuwa na mawingu na mvua itanyesha. Siku ya Alhamisi na Ijumaa vile vile kutakuwa na mawingu kiasi na vipindi vya jua. Upepo utavuma kwa kasi ya kilomita ishirini na tatu kwa saa. Unyevu utakuwa asilimia sitini na mbili na kuna uwezekano wa asilimia ishirini wa mvua kunyesha.

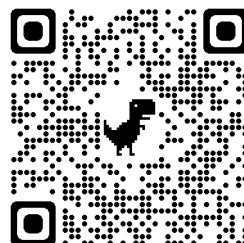
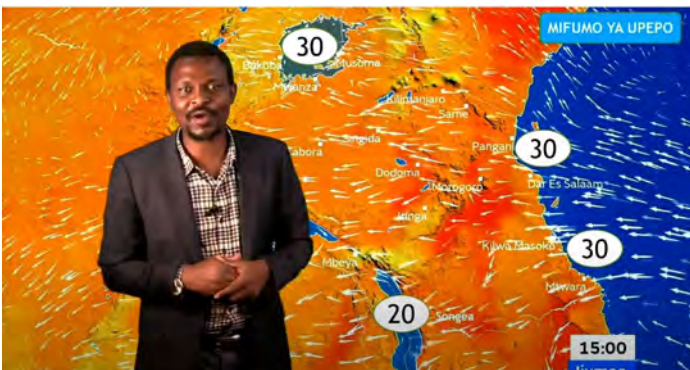
Based on the weather forecast above, decide whether the statements below are kweli (*true*) or si kweli (*false*). If the statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

1. Wiki hii hali ya hewa si nzuri kwa sababu kuna jua kali sana.
2. Kutoka siku ya Jumanne hadi Ijumaa kutakuwa na mawingu mengi na vipindi vya jua.
3. Mvua itanyesha siku ya Jumapili na Jumatatu.
4. Upepo utavuma kwa kasi ya kilomita ishirini na tatu kwa saa.
5. Kutakuwa na joto kali sana kila siku.



Zoezi I

Watch the weather forecast from Tanzania Meteorological Agency (TMA) television and answer the questions that follow.



tinyurl.com/42ztptsw

1. Utabiri huu wa hali ya hewa ni wa kutoka saa ngapi hadi saa ngapi?
2. Upepo utavuma kwa kasi ya kilomita 30 kwa saa katika sehemu gani?
3. Hali ya bahari inatarajiwa kuwa vipi?
4. Viwango vya joto vya juu zaidi vinatarajiwa katika maeneo gani?
5. Mvua inatarajiwa katika sehemu gani?
6. Ni maeneo gani yanatarajiwa kuwa makavu?



Zoezi J

Listen to the weather forecast from KBC Channel 1 and write a paragraph summarizing what you hear. How is the weather in Nairobi different from the current weather in your town?



tinyurl.com/2hkp7tbv

Cultural Explorations

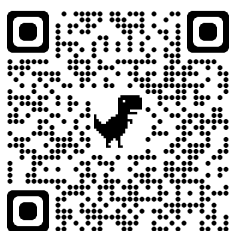
Before meteorological innovations such as satellite technology, African traditional rainmakers were a great resource in the community as they were believed to have mystical power to forecast the weather, make rain fall such as during drought, and stop rain in case of flooding or social needs. East African people living in rural areas are mainly engaged in agriculture so the rainmaker would use herbs and/or special stones to perform rituals to make rain for the community. Some communities also engaged in rainmaking dances and praying in the shrines especially if there was drought. In forecasting, rainmakers also observed the natural environment such as wind speed and direction, shape of clouds, behavior of some bird species, leaves of certain indigenous trees, movements of ants, termites, white butterflies, and some animals.

Having reliable rainmakers was important as they would inform their community that the rainy season was approaching so that they could prepare the land for planting. They could also identify heavy rains by looking at the emergence of a lot of safari ants, running of cattle and also strong winds, and advise those who lived down the hills to vacate so as to avoid being carried away by floods. Given the importance of ceremonies in the community, the rainmakers' services were highly sought in some communities during burials and weddings so that they could stop the rain until the event was completed.

Nowadays, the traditional weather forecasters in various countries where Swahili is spoken, such as the rainmakers of Nganyi in Western Kenya, have continued giving weather forecasts in local radio stations alongside the scientific forecast from meteorological departments. With the emerging challenge of climate change and food insecurity, there has been a push by the environmental scholars to document the practices of traditional rainmakers so that modern meteorological science can work together with traditional approaches.

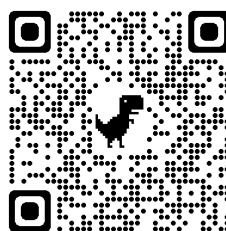
To understand more about traditional rainmakers, watch the videos below.

Traditional Rain Makers
CGTN Africa



tinyurl.com/bdfutjk8

The Rainmakers of Nganyi
The Sustainability Institute



tinyurl.com/44zfjns3

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. How do traditional practices of other communities compare with the rainmaking in African societies? Does your community have practices to make rain or to find water?
2. Do you think rainmakers are reliable in weather forecasting? Please explain your argument.
3. Do you think that rainmakers could help to mitigate the effects of climate change in the 21st century?



Zoezi K

As Tanzania is very close to the equator, there is not a lot of seasonal variation in terms of weather. Shamila describes the winter (*kipupwe*) and fall (*maanguko*) back home in the U.S. to her host mother. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Farida: Je, hali ya hewa ya Marekani ni sawa na ya Afrika Mashariki?

Shamila: Kuna tofauti kubwa sana katika hali ya hewa ya Afrika Mashariki na ya Marekani. Ingawa, kuna maeneo katika Marekani ambayo yana hali ya hewa ya kitropiki ambayo inakaribiana sana na ya Afrika Mashariki nitaangazia tofauti kubwa zilizopo kwenye hali ya hewa kati ya maeneo haya mawili. Kwanza, kuna misimu mbalimbali.

Farida: Je, kuna misimu ipi Marekani? Hapa Afrika Mashariki kuna misimu miwili tu. Msimu wa masika na msimu wa joto/au kiangazi.

Shamila: Marekani kuna misimu minne. Watu huvaa mavazi tofauti katika misimu tofauti kwa hivyo inawabidi wanunue nguo nyingi. Wakati wa msimu wa baridi, watu huvaa nguo nzitonzito lakini wakati wa msimu wa kiangazi, huwa ni bora kuvaa nguo nyepesi. Mavazi kama kaptula, fulana na tisheti huvaliwa msimu wa joto. Wakati wa msimu wa baridi, suruali ndefu za aina ya jinsi, shati, sweta na koti huvaliwa na watu wengi lakini kuna wengine ambao huvaa suti na koti wakienda ofisini.

Farida: Hapa Afrika Mashariki, watu hawahitaji kubadilisha mavazi sana kulingana na msimu. Je, mimea huathiriwa na hali ya hewa wakati wa misimu hii?

Shamila: Ndiyo, misimu hii huathiri ukuaji wa mimea. Msimu wa baridi ni kipindi ambacho kuna baridi kali sana.

Farida: Je, mimea hukua wakati wa baridi kali?

Shamila: Mimea mingi huwa haikuwi wakati huu Marekani. Nyuzi za joto mara nyingi huwa chini ya sufuri katika sehemu nyingi. Msimu huu una vipindi vifupi vya jua.

Farida: Je, huu ndio msimu ambao kuna theluji?

Shamila: Ndiyo. Maeneo mengi Marekani hupata theluji. Msimu mwingine ni msimu wa maanguko ambao huja kabla ya msimu wa baridi kutoka

mwezi wa Septemba hadi mwezi wa Novemba. Viwango vya joto hupungua wakati huu na miti pia hupoteza majani yake. Ni msimu wa kupendeza sana kwa sababu matawi ya miti hubadilika rangi kabla ya kupukutika. Wakati huu huwa na kazi nyingi sana ya kuondoa matawi kwenye ua.

Farida: Kwa, hivyo viwango vya baridi katika msimu wa maanguko si sawa na msimu wa baridi?

Shamila: Hapana. Katika msimu huu hakuna baridi kali. Msimu mwingine ni msimu wa machipuo wakati ambao baridi inapungua kabisa na mimea huanza kuchipuka tena. Maua huota na hupendeza sana wakati huu. Huwa na vipindi virefu vya joto. Ninapenda msimu huu zaidi kwa sababu mimi hupenda kufanya shughuli nyingi nje ya nyumba. Msimu wa mwisho ambao ninaupenda zaidi ni msimu wa kiangazi ijapo viwango vya joto wakati mwingine huwa juu zaidi. Mimi ninapenda kwenda ufukweni kuogelea.

Farida: Je, viwango vya joto ni sawa na huku Afrika Mashariki?

Shamila: La hashu, viwango vya joto vya juu zaidi sifikiri unaweza kuvilinganisha na vya Marekani. Huwa kuna joto kali na unyefu.

Farida: Kwa kweli hali ya hewa ya Marekani na Afrika Mashariki ni tofauti sana.

1. Marekani kuna misimu mingapi?
2. Katika Afrika Mashariki kuna misimu mingapi?
3. Kati ya Marekani na Afrika Mashariki, ni wapi kuna viwango vya joto chini zaidi?
4. Msimu wa baridi huwa vipi Marekani?
5. Watu huvaa mavazi gani wakati wa msimu wa baridi nchini Marekani?
6. Msimu wa maanguko huwa vipi Marekani?
7. Msimu wa machipuo huwa vipi Marekani?
8. Shamila anapenda msimu gani zaidi? Eleza kwa nini?
9. Ni mavazi gani yanayovaliwa na wamarekani katika msimu wa joto?



Zoezi L

Joseph talks to his host family's son about the activities that are typical in the United States in the fall (*maanguko*) and the spring (*machipuo*). Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Juma: Vipi Joseph? Umesema kuwa kuna misimu mbalimbali Marekani?

Joseph: Ndiyo, hali ya hewa katika nchi ya Marekani na nchi za Uropa ni tofauti sana na nchi za Afrika Mashariki. Marekani, kuna msimu wa kiangazi, msimu wa maanguko, msimu wa baridi na msimu wa machipuo. Kwa hivyo kuna misimu minne kwa jumla.

- Juma:** Inaonekana kuwa kuna mabadiliko mengi ya hali ya hewa Marekani. Je, wewe unapenda msimu gani?
- Joseph:** Mimi hupenda msimu wa maanguko zaidi. Wakati huu hakuna baridi kali wala joto kali. Mimi sipendi baridi kali na pia sipendi joto jingi.
- Juma:** Ninaona uko kama mimi. Pia sipendi baridi kali wala joto jingi. Ninafikiri kama ningekuwa ninaishi Marekani ningependa msimu wa machipuo. Je, wewe unapenda kufanya shughuli gani katika msimu wa machipuo?
- Joseph:** Ninapenda kutembea kwenye bustani na kucheza mpira wa kandanda pamoja na rafiki zangu. Hali ya anga huwa nzuri sana na miti huwa na maua maridadi.
- Juma:** Je, huu ndio msimu ambao hali ya anga ni nzuri au kuna msimu mwingine?
- Joseph:** Msimu wa maanguko si mbaya sana kwa sababu ya hali nzuri ya hewa. Mimi hupenda kufanya vitu vingi vya starehe nje. Mimi hupenda kwenda msituni kuwinda, kukwea milima, kutembea na kukimbia nje. Mimi huandaa ratiba ya vitu vingi vya kufanya wakati huu.
- Juma:** Je, wewe hufanya shughuli gani kwa kawaida katika msimu huu?
- Joseph:** Mimi na familia yangu hupenda kufanya vitu vingi pamoja kama desturi yetu. Kwa sababu sisi tuna bustani la matofaa, sisi hushiriki katika shughuli za kuvuna matofaa, kuyapima, na kuyasafirisha kwenye maduka mbalimbali.

1. Kuna tofauti gani katika ya hali ya anga Marekani na Afrika Mashariki?
2. Joseph anapenda msimu gani, na kwa nini?
3. Kama Juma angekuwa anaishi Marekani, angependa msimu gani?
4. Joseph hufanya shughuli gani katika msimu wa machipuo?
5. Joseph hupenda kufanya nini msimu wa maanguko?
6. Joseph na familia yake wana desturi ya kufanya nini pamoja?
7. Wewe hupenda kufanya nini msimu wa machipuo na msimu wa maanguko?
8. Ni vitu gani wewe na familia yako hufanya wakati wa msimu wa kiangazi?



Zoezi M

Joseph's classmate Fola, who is from Nigeria, wants to know what activities Joseph engages in during the spring when he is back home. She also shares information about the rainy season in Nigeria with Joseph. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

- Joseph:** Ninaona kuna mvua nyingi msimu huu. Je, katika nchi yako hali ya hewa iko vipi sasa?
- Fola:** Sasa pia ni msimu wa mvua katika Nigeria ya kati sehemu ninayotoka. Msimu wa mvua huanza mwezi wa nne hadi mwezi wa tisa.
- Joseph:** Je, wewe na familia yako hufanya shughuli gani msimu huu wa mvua?

Fola: Mimi na familia yangi tunapenda kufanya kazi za shambani kama vile kupanda, kupalilia, kulima, na kuitunza mimea. Wazazi wangu wana shamba kubwa sana na sisi hutumia muda mrefu sana kufanya kazi mbali mbali za shambani. Ninapenda msimu wa mvua kwa sababu mandhari habadilika na kuwa ya kijani kila mahali na kila mtu hufurahia kukuza vyakula kwa mahitaji yao. Je, wewe unapenda msimu huu wa masika?

Joseph: Mimi sipendi sana majira ya masika kwa sababu kuna baridi nyingi na pia siwezi kufanya vitu vingi nje. Mimi ninapenda kipindi ambacho hakuna mvua nyingi na pia hakuna joto jingi.

Fola: Ninakuelewa. Itabidi uvumilie msimu huu wa masika. Je, kule Marekani wewe unapenda msimu upi?

Joseph: Mimi ninapenda msimu wa machipuo. Huu ni msimu unaoanza baada ya msimu wa baridi na kabla ya msimu wa kiangazi. Machipuo ni wakati ambao mimea inaanza kuchipuka. Wakati huu joto huongezeka. Watu wengi huwacha kuvaa nguo nzito za baridi. Katika Uropa na pia Marekani wakulima wengi hutayarisha mashamba yao na hupanda mazao ya shambani. Familia yangu inaishi mjini kwa hivyo msimu huu huwa hatuna shughuli za ukulima. Lakini babu yangu huwa na shughuli nyingi sana kwa sababu ana shamba kubwa.

Fola: Je, msimu huu mimea huchipuka au ile iliyopandwa hukua?

Joseph: Ndiyo, katika msimu huu mimea iliyopandwa huchipuka na hukua. Pia wanyama wengi hutoka katika hali ya mafichoni ambayo wao huingia katika msimu wa baridi. Wanyama wengi huanza shughuli za kuzaana kwa sababu ya hali joto ya juu wakati huu. Ninapenda wakati huu kwa sababu unapata kuwa kuna wanyama wengi nje na pia mazingira huwa ya kupendeza.

Fola: Je, wewe hupenda kufanya nini msimu huu?

Joseph: Kwa sababu mimi hupenda kufanya shughuli za nje, mimi hushiriki katika mashindano mengi ya uendeshaji wa baisikeli. Nimewahi kushiriki kwenye mashindano ya kuendesha baisikeli ya kilomita mia moja. Wakati huu mimi pia huenda kukwea milima, kupiga kambi, na kutembelea vivutio mbalimbali ambavyo vina shughuli nyingi za nje.

Fola: Kweli kuna vitu vingi vya kufana na kufanya.

1. Joseph anapenda msimu gani?
2. Shamila anapenda msimu gani?
3. Kwa nini Joseph hapendi msimu wa masika?
4. Fola hufanya shughuli gani katika msimu wa baridi?
5. Kwa nini Fola anapenda shughuli za msimu wa baridi?
6. Joseph hufanya shughuli gani katika msimu wa machipuo?
7. Kuna mabadiliko gani ya mandhari katika msimu wa machipuo?
8. Wanyama hufanya nini katika msimu wa machipuo?
9. Je, kuna msimu ambao wewe hupendi? Eleza kwa nini?



Zoezi N

Interview your partner to find out what their favorite season was while growing up. Find out what the weather was like where they lived, the kinds of clothing they typically wore, and the activities they liked to do. As time allows, find out if they have changed their favorite seasons and the activities they do as they have gotten older or moved to a different location.



Zoezi O

Prepare a presentation about a dream vacation spot that you would like to visit. Be sure to mention what the weather is like, what clothes you would need to pack, specific foods that you might be able to have, souvenirs that you would like to buy, and how you would occupy yourself during the day and at night.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

angavu bright
baridi cold; chilly
bila mawingu cloudless
bora suitable
bovu bad
chache some
chini low (with regard to temperature)
dogo little; small
-enye mawingu cloudy
haba lack of
joto warm
juu high (with regard to temperature)
kali extreme (with regard to temperature)
kavu dry
majimaji wet
nyingi a lot
nzuri nice
tele plenty
vumilivu persevering

Nouns

barafu ice
chamchelea whirl winds; circling winds
dhoruba storm
hali ya anga; hewa weather; climate
hali ya hewa ya kitropiki tropical weather
halijoto temperature
halijoto chini low temperature
halijoto juu/kali high temperature
hewa air; atmosphere
istiwai; ikweta equator
jua sun
kiangazi; joto summer
kimbunga hurricane; swirling winds
kipupwe; baridi kali; baridi sana winter
kiwango level
mabadiliko ya hali ya hewa/anga/tabia nchi climate change
machipuo; masika; mvua nyingi spring
mafuriko floods
manyunyu; rasharasha light drizzle
mawimbi kasi air waves; gusts
msimu; majira; nyakati season
mvua rain
mvuke steam
mwezi moon
ngurumo za radi thunderstorm
nyota stars

radi thunder
sayari planet
theluji snow
tufani heavy storm
ukungu fog; mist
umande dew
umeme lightning
unyevu; chepechepe humidity; dew; dampness
upepo wind
upinde wa mvua/lindi rainbow
vipimo/viwango vya baridi measures/levels of cold temperatures
vipimo/viwango vya joto measures/levels of warm temperatures
vuli; maanguko; mvua chache; mchoo fall; autumn
wingu; mawingu cloud; clouds

Verbs

-andaa to prepare
-anguka to fall
-athiri to affect
-badilisha to change
-chipuka to sprout
-enda to go
-endesha to ride; to drive
-kauka to dry
-kua to develop; to grow
-kupiga kambi to camp
-kuwinda to hunt
-kwea to climb
-lima to till
-linganisha to compare
-nyesha to rain
-palilia to weed
-panda to plant
-panga to arrange; plan
-pata to get
-pukutika to loose leaves; to shed off leaves
-tembea to walk; stroll
-vaa to wear
-vuna to harvest

Key Phrases

Hali ya hewa ni nzuri leo. The weather is nice today.
Hali ya hewa/anga huwa vipi katika msimu wa machipuo? How is the weather condition in the spring?
Hali ya hewa/anga namna gani leo? How is the weather today?
Kuna tahadhari kuhusu hali ya hewa leo. There is a weather advisory today.
Kupatwa kwa jua solar eclipse
Kupatwa kwa mwezi lunar eclipse
Kuwa mwangalifu kuhusu hali ya hewa leo. Be careful about the weather today.
Leo hakuna mvua. There is no rain today.

Leo hakuna upepo. It is not windy today.
Leo hali ya hewa ni mbaya. Today the weather is bad.
Leo kuna baridi kali. It is too cold today.
Leo kuna joto kali. It is too hot today.
Ninapenda hali ya hewa leo. I like the weather today.
Sipendi hali ya hewa leo. I do not like the weather today.
Viwango vya baridi viko chini leo. The temperatures are low today.
Viwango vya joto viko juu leo. The temperatures are high today.
Wewe hupendi kufanya nini msimu wa joto?
What don't you like to do during the summer?
Wewe huvaa nguo gani katika msimu wa kiangazi?
What clothing do you wear during the summer?
Wewe unapenda kufanya nini msimu wa kipupwe?
What do you like to do during the winter?

6.4 Sherehe na likizo



Zoezi A

Read the wedding invitation below and determine whether the statements that follow are true or false. If the statement is false, modify it as needed to make it true.

Familia ya
Bwana na Bibi
Dzo Mamlaka
na Bwana na Bibi
Musa Hodari wana furaha
kuwaalika Prof/Dk/Mh/Bwana
na Bibi Juma kwenge harusi
ya watoto wao wapendwa.

Hidaya na Fikirini.

Ibada ya ndoa itakuwa kwenge kanisa la Calvary
Temple, Arusha, tarehe 17/10/23, saa 4.00
asubuhi hadi saa 6:00 mchana.

Kisha kutakuwa na sherehe ya ndoa kwenge
Bustani la Ngare Sero Mountain Lodge, Arusha,
saa 8:00 mchana hadi 12:00 jioni. Tunatambuliza
shukrani zetu za dhati.



1. Fikirini na Hidaya ni watoto wa Bwana Mamlaka na Bwana Musa.
2. Ibada ya ndoa ya Fikirini na Hidaya itakuwa kwenye bustani la Ngare Sero.
3. Sherehe ya ndoa itafanyika kwenye Calvary Temple.
4. Ibada ya ndoa itaanza saa 6:00 mchana hadi saa 10:00 jioni.
5. Sherehe ya harusi itaisha saa 2:00 usiku.
6. Ibada ya ndoa itafanyika baada ya sherehe itakayokuwa kwenye bustani la Ngare Sero.



Zoezi B

Listen to the passage about wedding customs and answer the questions that follow.

1. Waswahili wanasherehekea harusi kwa muda gani?
2. Majukumu ya wanawake huwa ni yapi wakati wa sherehe za harusi?
3. Kukata na kulishana keki kuna ishara gani kwenye jamii ya Waswahili?
4. Bibi harusi na bwana harusi hufanya nini baada ya siku saba kufutia kufunga kwao kwa ndoa?
5. Sherehe za harusi husherehekewa vipi katika jamii yako?



Zoezi C

Read Shamila's and Bibi Farida's conversation about plans for the wedding next weekend and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Habari za jioni Bibi Farida?

Farida: Salama sana. Na wewe je?

Shamila: Mimi niko salama. Ninaona unapumzika kwa kusoma.

Farida: La hata sisomi. Huu ni mwaliko wa harusi kutoka kwa rafiki yangu Aisha. Aisha anaishi katika mji wa Songoma. Binti yake anaolewa.

Shamila: Hongera sana kwa binti ya Bibi Aisha. Je, harusi itakuwa lini?

Farida: Harusi itakuwa Jumamosi ijayo katika mji wa Arusha kwa sababu wakwe wa Aisha wanatoka Arusha. Harusi itakuwa kanisa la Arusha Vineyard. Ningependa kwenda na wewe kwa harusi hii.

Shamila: Bila shaka mimi ningependa kwenda kwa harusi hiyo. Ningependa kushuhudia desturi za harusi katika eneo la Afrika mashariki.

Farida: Safi kabisa. Sherehe ya harusi itaanza mwendo wa saa nne pale kanisani. Kwa hivyo tutaondoka Ijumaa asubuhi kuelekea Arusha.

Shamila: Sawa. Je, tunahitaji kupeleka kitu chochote kwenye harusi?

Farida: Kama desturi, kwa sababu mimi ni rafiki wa karibu sana wa Aisha na binti yake ni kama binti yangu, nimeandaa zawadi ambayo tutampelekea. Nimeandaa vyombo vichache vya nyumbani kama vile bilauri, vikombe, sahani, mtungi wa gesi, jiko la kupika na bahasha ya pesa.

Shamila: Zawadi tele kwa maharusi hao. Watafurahia kweli. Je, tunahitaji kufanya maandalizi gani mengine?

Farida: Hamna maandalizi mengi ya kufanya kwa sababu sisi tumealikwa kama wageni. Tutajipodoa na kuvaa mavazi ya kupendeza. Kisha twende. Fundi wangu wa nguo atakuja kesho jioni kutupima kisha atatushona mavazi ya vitenge.

Shamila: Asante sana Bibi Farida. Ninatazamia sana kuhudhuria sherehe hiyo.

Farida: Nina matumaini kuwa sherehe ya harusi itakuwa ya kufana sana. Kutakuwa na muziki wa na vyakula vya kitamaduni.

Shamila: Niko tayari kwenda kwa harusi.

1. Farida amealikwa kwa sherehe ya harusi na nani?
2. Sherehe ya harusi itakuwa siku gani?
3. Je, Shamila anapanga kuhudhuria sherehe hiyo?
4. Bibi Farida ameandalia maharusi zawadi gani?
5. Kwa nini bibi Farida anatarajia kuwa sherehe itakuwa ya kufana sana?
6. Unafikiri baada ya ibada ya ndoa ni nini kitafanyika?
7. Kuna tofauti gani kati ya tamaduni za sherehe za harusi za jamii yako na zile za Afrika Mashariki?



Zoezi D

Shamila noticed that people were wearing different traditional clothes, and on their way from the wedding, she engaged in a discussion with her host mother about the clothing culture in Tanzania. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Harusi ilikuwa nzuri sana na niliona kuwa watu wanavaa mavazi ya kitamaduni tofauti tofauti. Mitindo ya mavazi mijini na vijijini ni tofauti sana. Pia ni tofauti kidogo na mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii yangu.

Farida: Kuna tofauti ya mitindo ya mavazi mijini na vijijini na pia kulingana na jamii na dini. Umeona kuwa wanawake wa dini ya kiisilamu huvalia buibui ambalo linasitiri mwili wote. Wengine wanatumia vazi la kanga kama buibui. Mavazi haya ni kulingana na maadili ya dini yao. Wanaume vilevile wanavalia kanzu na barghasia kichwani. Katika maeneo ambayo wakaazi wengi wanashiriki kwenye dini ya Kiisilamu hata watu wageni wanastahili kuvaa kama wenyeji kuonyesha heshima kwa tamaduni zao na dini ya kiisilamu. Iwapo wanawake hawavali buibui, wanastahili kuvalia sketi ndefu na blauzi ya mikono mirefu inayositiri mwili wote na kufunika nywele kwa mtandio au hijabu.

- Shamila:** Asante sana kwa maelezo hayo ya kina. Ninakubaliana nawe kuwa ni muhimu kuheshimu desturi na dini za watu wengine. Nina mavazi yanayofaa ambayo nitatumia wakati tutakaposafiri kwenda kijijini kukutana na familia yako. Je, kuna tofauti zingine za mavazi kati ya watu wa mjini na vijijini?
- Farida:** Kama unavyoona hapa jijini Dar es Salaam, kuna mitindo mbalimbali ya mavazi ya kisasa. Hii inatokana na athari za utandawazi. Katika tamaduni za babu zetu wanawake walivaa gauni, sketi ndefu au nguo ambazo zilisitiri mwili wote. Lakini sasa unaona mavazi ya aina mbalimbali ya wanawake kama, suruali ndefu au fupi, gauni ndefu au fupi, vitenge na mitindo rasmi au ile isiyo rasmi kutoka kwa nchi zingine.
- Shamila:** Je, mitindo ya wanaume pia imebadilika?
- Farida:** Ndiyo. Kuna tofauti ya mtindo ya mavazi ya miaka ya themanini, tisini na ya kisasa. Kwa mfano suti za enzi zile zilikuwa kubwa lakini za hivi sasa zinamfaa mtu vyema. Pia kuna aina nyingi za viatu.
- Shamila:** Je, mitindo ya mavazi vijijini ikoje?
- Farida:** Vijijini, mavazi yanategemea desturi za jamii. Kwa mfano jamii ya wamaasai imezingatia mila zao na mavazi yao ya kitamaduni. Wao hutumia shuka ambazo wanazifunga kwenye kiuno na sehemu ya juu ya mabega. Wao pia hutumuia mapambo mengi ya shanga kulingana na umri wa mtu. Mapambo haya yanavaliwa kwa shingo au mikono. Wao huvaa vipuli kwenye masikio na vishaufu kwenye midomo. Pia wao hutengeneza viatu vyao kwa kutumia tairi ya gari. Viatu hivi hudumu kwa muda mrefu.
- Shamila:** Na wanawake wamaasai huvaa vipi?
- Farida:** Wanawake wakiwaasia huvaa gauni za kitamaduni ambazo huwa zenye rangi za kung'aa. Mara nyingi huwa za rangi nyekundu. Pia wao huvalia mapambo mengi ya shanga. Katika utamaduni wao sanaa ya kutengeneza mapambo ni kitu ambacho wanawake wengi hujifunza wakiwa na umri mdogo.
- Shamila:** Je, watu katika jamii zingine huvaa vipi?
- Farida:** Katika vijiji vingi watu wengi bado wanazingatia itikadi za zamani. Mavazi ya wanawake ni marefu yanayositiri mwili wote bila kubana mwili sana. Wanaume pia huvaa mavazi ya kawaida. Mara nyingi huvaa suruali ndefu, shati au tisheti, na kanzu. Wanafunzi katika shule za msingi na za sekondari huvaa sare za shule. Wafanyakazi wengine kwa mfano nesi huvaa sare zao rasmi za kazi.
- Shamila:** Asante sana kwa kunielimisha kuhusu utamaduni wenu. Nimefurahi kuelewa utamaduni wenu zaidi.
- Farida:** Bila shaka tutazungumza zaidi. Ningependa kujua mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii yako. Utahitaji kununua vazi la kitenge ili uvae utakapohudhuria harusi nyingine. Utapendeza sana! Itakuwa bora pia kununua kanga kwa matumizi ya nyumbani au kuvaa kwenye sherehe mbalimbali.

Shamila: Asante sana kwa ushauri wako. Ningependa nishonewe kitenge maridadi wikendi hii. Pia, nitaenda sokoni kununua kanga.

Farida: Mipango mizuri hiyo. Je, unafahamu umuhimu wa kanga kwa wanawake?

Shamila: Sijui sana, lakini nitasoma zaidi kuhusu asili na matumizi ya kanga katika jamii ya Waswahili.

1. Je, mitindo ya mavazi mjini na vijini Tanzania ni sawa? Eleza kwa nini?
2. Je, wewe ukienda katika maeneo ya dini ya Kiislamu nchini Tanzania utavaa mavazi gani?
3. Wanaume na wanawake katika jamii ya wamaasai huvaa mavazi gani?
4. Wanaume na wanawake katika jamii ya wamaasai huvaa mapambo gani?
5. Watu wengi vijijini Tanzania huvaa vipi?
6. Kuna tofauti gani katika mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii ya Bibi Farida na jamii yako?
7. Kuna usawa gani katika mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii ya Bibi Farida na jamii yako?
8. Wanafunzi wa shule za msingi na shule za sekondari katika jamii yako huvaa mavazi gani?
9. Jamii ya wamaasai wanapenda nguo za rangi gani?
10. Je, utandawazi umeathiri mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii yako? Toa maelezo.



Zoezi E

Read the article about the *kanga* and answer the questions that follow.

Vazi la Kanga

Kanga ni vazi ambalo ni maarufu katika Afrika Mashariki. Asili ya vazi hili ni mji wa Zanzibar. Vazi hili lilianzishwa kutokana na ushawishi wa wareno. Kanga ya kwanza iliyotengenezwa ilikuwa yenye rangi nyeusi na nyeupe. Kanga hii ilitengenzwa mwaka wa elfu moja mia nane na sita. Kanga hii ilijulikana kama khanga Zhamira na baadaye vazi hilo likaendelea kukua kupitia ubunifu mbalimbali. Vazi hili linajulikana kama lesa nchini Kenya na Kanga au Khanga nchini Tanzania.

Kanga huvaliwa maeneo mbalimbali ya Afrika Mashariki na Afrika ya Kati. Vazi la kanga hutumika zaidi katika maeneo ya pwani kama vile Dar es Salaam, Mombasa, na Zanzibar. Vazi hili ni muhimu kwa utamaduni wa Waswahili na lina historia ndefu.

Vazi la kanga lina uhusiano mkubwa na sanaa kutokana na maandishi yanayoandikwa kwenye kanga, michoro na rangi zinazotumika. Jina kanga linatokana na rangi asili ya vitonetone vyeupe na mwili mweusi wa ndege anayeitwa kanga. Kwa sababu hii, kanga za awali zilikuwa zenye rangi nyeupe na nyeusi. Wanawake wazanzibari walitumia lesi hizo katika shughuli tofauti tofauti hasa kuswali. Kwa ufupi, vazi la kanga lina thamani kubwa sana kwa mwanamke mswahili kutokana na rangi zake zinazomfanya mwanamke apendeze lakini pia zina maana halisi kwa wanazozitumia.

Kanga huwa na sehemu tatu kwa hivyo ni vazi lenye ubunifu mkubwa, lenye urembo na utamaduni wa wavaaji. Pindo ni sehemu ambayo huwa imezunguka kanga yote. Mji ni sehemu ya pili na huwa ndani ya pindo. Sehemu ya Yahya ni sehemu ya tatu ambayo ni jina la kanga au ujumbe ulioandikwa kwenye kanga. Sehemu hii ni muhimu sana kwa kuwa kihistoria kanga ilitumika kama njia ya mawasiliano kutokana na mtindo wake wa kuwa na ujumbe kama methali, misemo na maneno yenye mafumbo yaliyokuwa na maana tofauti.



Maandishi ya asili mwanzoni mwa Karne ya Ishirini yalikuwa ya lugha ya Kiarabu lakini baada ya kuongezeka kwa watumiaji wa kanga nje ya sehemu za pwani hadi kwenye Afrika Mashariki yote, alphabeti za kilatini zilianza kutumika. Mvaaji wa kanga alikuwa akichagua kanga atakayoivaa kulingana na ujumbe aliotaka kupitisha kwa jamii yake. Kwa mfano, kuna kanga ya kisutu ya bibi harusi inayotumika kufunika kitanda siku ya

harusi. Aina hii ya kanga ilikuwa na maandishi gani? Maandishi yalikuwa na mafumbo ambayo yaliashiria ujumbe ambao mvaaji alitaka kueleza jamii yake bila kuzungumza.

Kwa kawaida, wasichana na wanawake ndio huvaa kanga. Kwa utamaduni wa waisilamu, wanawake wanapaswa kujifunika kanga kuanzia kwenye kifua hadi sehemu ya miguu. Kanga nyingine inapaswa kufunika sehemu ya kichwa hadi kwenye mabega. Kitamaduni, wanaume hawafai kuvaa kanga nje ya nyumba au uani, mbele ya wageni au watoto wao wakubwa. Inaruhusiwa mwanamume kutumia kanga anapokuwa tu na mke wake chumbani mwao mwa kulala.

Utalii umefanya matumizi ya kitamaduni ya kanga kuwa tofauti kidogo. Siku hizi watu wanaponunua kitambaa cha kanga wanakikata na kukitumia kwa shughuli tofauti kama vile kutengeneza kofia, mikoba, shati, gauni, rinda, blauzi, marembesho ya nyumba na kadhalika. Waswahili na watu wa Afrika Mashariki kwa jumla hutumia kanga kwenye sherehe tofauti. Kwa mfano, kanga inatumika kwenye harusi, mazishi, kupitisha ujumbe wa busara au ushauri, na matumizi mbalimbali ya nyumbani kama kujipanguza, kujisitiri, kubeba watoto, aproni na kadhalika. Matumizi ya kanga pia yameingia kwenye siasa, ambapo zinatumika kwenye kampeni na kusherehekea matukio ya kisiasa. Bila shaka kanga ni vazi muhimu kiuchumi, kiutamaduni, kisiasa na matumizi yake na ubunifu kwenye watumiaji utaendelea kukua katika siku zijazo kwenye maeneo ya Afrika Mashariki.

1. Vazi la kanga linatumika zaidi katika sehemu gani ?
2. Katika nchi ya Kenya, vazi la kanga linajulikana kwa jina gani?
3. Ni jambo gani lilifanya maandishi ya kanga yabadilike kutoka kwa lugha ya kiarabu hadi kwa alphabeti ya kilatini?
4. Kanga hutumika katika shughuli gani za nyumbani?
5. Utamaduni wa waswahili unawaruhusu wanaume kuvaa kanga wapi au wakati gani?
6. Waswahili wanatumia kanga katika sherehe gani?
7. Ni sehemu gani ya kanga inayotumika kupitisha ujumbe wa mafumbo, au kutoa ushauri wa busara?
8. Watu walipotaka kupitisha ujumbe wao, walitumia kanga vipi?
9. Jamii ya waswahili waliwapatia wasichana kanga wakati gani?
10. Kanga ya kisutu inatumika wakati gani?



Zoezi F

Read the following article about Ramadan and answer the questions that follow.

Ramadhani ndiyo mwezi wa tisa wa kalenda ya Kiislamu na Waislamu duniani kote huutukuza mwezi huu kwa kufunga na kufanya ibada nyingi. Ni mwezi ambao inaaminika Quran tukufu iliteremshwa na mwenyezi mungu kutoka mbinguni hadi ulimwenguni. Waislamu wengi duniani wanaamini kuwa mfungo wa Ramadhani ni miongoni mwa nguzo tano kuu za dini ya Kiislamu, tangu zama za Mtume Muhammad (SAW) zaidi ya miaka 1,400 iliyopita. Kwa kawaida saumu huanza alfajiri na kumalizika baada ya kuzama kwa jua kila siku. Ramadhani hufanywa kwa saa 12 hadi 18 popote duniani kila siku, lakini inategemea mtu anaishi sehemu gani ya dunia.

Wakati wa kufunga, kula, kunywa au chochote kinachohusiana na kujamiana kati ya mwanamume na mwanamke huepukwa kuanzia wakati wa alfajiri mpaka kuzama kwa jua. Kufunga ni wajibu wa kila mwislamu aliye na umri wa utu uzima. Watu wagonjwa, wasafiri, wazee, wajawazito, akina mama wanaonyonyesha au wagonjwa wa kisukari na wanawake walioko katika hedhi hawastahili kufunga kulingana na sheria za dini ya kiislamu.

1. Ramadhani huadhimishwa mwezi gani?
2. Ni wajibu wa waislamu duniani kote kufanya nini wakati wa Ramadhani?
3. Kwa kawaida, saumu huanza na kuisha saa ngapi?
4. Ni watu gani wanaostahili kufunga kulingana na dini ya kiislamu?
5. Ni makundi gani ya watu ambayo hayastahili kufunga? Eleza kwa nini?

Cultural Explorations

Holidays and observances vary across East African countries and communities. Most countries share common public holidays like New Year's Eve and New Year's Day. Other commonly celebrated holidays include Christmas, Good Friday, and Easter Sunday celebrated by Christians, as well as Eid al-Fitr and Eid al-Adha, commemorated mostly by the Muslim community. Labor Day is celebrated on May 1st across Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda, and Rwanda.

Celebrations specific to East African nations include those to celebrate independence from colonizers as well as to honor founders of the nations. In Kenya, this holiday is referred as *Jamhuri Day* meaning Republic Day and is celebrated on December 12th, while Tanzania and Uganda observe their Independence Day holidays on December 9th and October 9th, respectively. In East Africa, Diwali, the Hindu festival of lights, is also celebrated.

There are other major political commemorations with key significance in East Africa, especially those linked with liberation from colonial rule, fight for democracy, and multipartyism, but which have not attained national holiday status. For instance, *Saba Saba Day* is observed on July 7th in both Kenya and Tanzania. This day commemorates the key role that Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) played in uniting Tanganyika and Zanzibar to form the Republic of Tanzania. In Kenya, July 7th commemorates the demonstrations for free elections that took place in 1990. During these holidays and holy days, East Africans cook food and invite friends and family over to commemorate the events. People choose to wear clothes based on the

theme of the event they are celebrating, their traditional practices, and religious affiliations - particularly for Christmas and Eid al-Fitr.

Generally, communities adhere to certain rules and restrictions about their religious culture, diet, and attire to be worn during religious celebrations. For the whole month of Ramadan, which takes place during the 9th month of the Islamic lunar calendar, the Muslim community will not consume any food nor drink anything between sunrise and sunset. Instead, Muslims will eat before dawn and after sunset, usually meeting together in the Mosque or community centers, or at home with other invited guests to break their fast together. They use this time together to share food, socialize, and pray as a community. The fasting is meant to help Muslims focus on their religion, faith and to read the Koran. Keeping these traditions during Ramadan allows reflection, self-improvement on one's character, faith, and improved relationships with others in the community as well as with the divine. Given the challenge that fasting from sunrise to sunset presents for some groups, those that are pregnant, elderly, or ill as well as children and preteens are exempted from this long period of self-deprivation. If able, they can still choose to fast for a few days. At the end of Eid al-Fitr, Muslim communities will hold a big ceremony to officially end this month of fasting. During this ceremony they will prepare various types of food, eat together, socialize, listen to music, and pray.

Cultural Reflections

With a partner or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. Are there common holidays shared by all people in your country? How are those holidays celebrated?
2. Are there holidays in your country that are only observed by certain groups? Are those holidays secular or religious? Are those holidays recognized officially by the broader community?
3. Are there holidays that belong to a certain portion of the community but are adopted more broadly?
4. How do holidays and celebrations in your country compare to those in East Africa?



Zoezi G

Joseph and his host mother talk about the plans they have for the Eid al Fitr celebrations. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Mama: Vipi Joseph? Ninatumaini kuwa umekuwa na mfungo mzuri.

Joseph: Ndiyo mama. Nimefurahia sana kujifunza mambo mengi ya utamaduni na itikadi za dini ya kiislamu katika kipindi hiki cha Ramadhani.

Mama: Ninafurahi kusikia kuwa umejifunza mambo mengi na pia umefurahia wakati huu. Kesho tutakuwa na sherehe kubwa ya Eid ul Fitr.

Joseph: Nimeona umenunua vyakula vingi sana ulipoenda sokoni. Je, unapanga kuandaa vyakula gani?

Mama: Ningependa kuandaa pilau, kuku wa kuchoma, samaki wa nazi, chapati, nyama choma, maandazi na chai.

Joseph: Hivyo ni vyakula vingi sana. Ninafikiri utachukua muda mrefu sana kuvitayaarisha vyakula hivi vyote.

Mama: Bila shaka nitachukua muda mrefu, pengine saa tano hivi.

Joseph: Utaandaa vyakula gani?

Mama: Unajua mimi ninapenda mapishi sana, kwa hivyo nitawaandalia wageni wangu vipochopocho vingi.

Joseph: Kweli, wewe ni mpishi hodari. Ninafamu pia kuwa sherehe hii ni muhimu sana kwa waislamu.

Mama: Ndiyo, sherehe hii ni muhimu sana kwa watu wetu. Sisi huadhimisha sherehe hii kumaliza mfungo wa mwezi mtukufu wa Ramadhani duniani kote. Kwa hivyo kesho sisi tutaandaa karamu kubwa na tutakula pamoja na rafiki zetu. Wanaangu wote na familia watafika kusherehekea sikukuu hii.

Joseph: Kweli itakuwa siku ya kufana na familia itaweza kukusanyika kwa sababu sherehe hii huadhimishwa kwenye taifa nzima, kwa hivyo watu walioajiriwa huwa hawafanyi kazi siku hii.

Mama: Umekaribishwa sana pamoja na wanafunzi wengine katika darasa lako kuja kusherehekea pamoja nasi.

Joseph: Asante kwa mwaliko wako. Nitawapigia rafiki zangu simu ili waweze kufika mapema kwenye sherehe hii. Je, tutaanza sherehe saa ngapi kesho?

Mama: Tutaanza sherehe saa kumi na moja za jioni.

Joseph: Safi kabisa!

1. Joseph amejifunza nini wakati wa kipindi cha Ramadhani?
2. Mama alimwambia Joseph kesho kutakuwa na sherehe gani?
3. Sherehe hii huadhimisha nini kwa waumini wa dini ya Kiislamu?
4. Je, wafanyakazi hufanya kazi siku ya sherehe hii?
5. Mama anapanga kupika vyakula gani kwenye sikukuu hiyo?
6. Vyakula ambavyo mama anapanga kuandaa vitachukua takriban muda gani?
7. Mama angependa Joseph aalike nani kwenye sherehe hii?
8. Sherehe itaanza saa ngapi?
9. Mama amewaalika nani kwenye shere hii?
10. Je, umewahi kuhudhuria sherehe yeyote ya kidini? Toa maelezo mafupi.
11. Ni sherehe gani kubwa katika utamaduni wako? Toa maelezo mafupi.



Zoezi H

Get together with a partner and find out a holiday that you both celebrate. Discuss the typical activities that you associate with that holiday, including any special food prepared or traditions that are practiced. Be ready to share what you have learned with the class.



Zoezi I

Your host family in East Africa would like to know about the different traditions your family has for the holidays. Working with the same partner that you had above, briefly describe the holiday that you both celebrate and the different traditions that you have.



Zoezi J

Juma calls Joseph to find out whether he has plans during the Independence Day celebration. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Juma: Vipi Joseph? Habari za jioni?

Joseph: Salama. Na wewe je?

Juma: Salama pia. Je, una mipango yeyote kesho? Kesho ni likizo ya kitaifa ya kusherehekea siku ambayo nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru kutoka kwa serikali ya Uingereza.

Joseph: Alaa! Sikujua kwamba nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru wake mnamo tarehe tisa mwezi wa Desemba. Je, nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru wake mwaka gani?

Juma: Nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru wake mwaka wa elfu moja mia tisa sitini na moja.

Joseph: Kweli nchi hii ni changa mno. Je, Watanzania hufanya nini kuadhimisha sikuu hii?

Juma: Wakati wa sherehe hii ya kitaifa, kwa kawaida huwa na hafla kubwa katika uwanja mkubwa wa michezo wa Sokoine. Katika hafla hii huwa kuna burudani mbali mbali (nyimbo, dansi, michezo ya kuigiza). Baada ya burudani huwa kuna kipindi cha hotuba kutoka kwa viongozi mbali mbali wa serikali. Mwisho huwa na hotuba ya rais.

Joseph: Inaonekana hii ni sherehe muhimu sana. Je, tunaweza kwenda kwa uwanja wa michezo wa Sokoine kuhudhuria sherehe hii?

Juma: Unaweza kwenda bali kutakuwa na watu wengi sana. Mimi hupenda kutazama hafla hiyo kwenye runinga.

Joseph: Ningependa kutazama kwa runinga pia.

Juma: Sherehe hiyo ya kitaifa itaanza mwendo was saa tatu za asubuhi hadi saa nane mchana. Kama hutakuwa na shughuli tunaweza kwenda pamoja kupata burudani zaidi katika klabu kipya mjini.

Joseph: Wazo nzuri nitajiunga nawe kwenda kilabuni. Nitakuwa tayari saa tisa mchana.

1. Nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru wake lini?
2. Nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru wake kutoka kwa nchi gani?
3. Watanzania hufanya nini wanapoadhimisha sikukuu ya uhuru wao?
4. Juma hupenda kufanya nini badala ya kuhudhuria sherehe ya uhuru?

5. Juma angependa yeye na Joseph wafanye nini baada ya sherehe ya uhuru?
6. Je, wewe hufanya nini siku ya sherehekea uhuru wa nchi yako?



Zoezi K

Shamila receives a phone call from Joseph to invite her to the Independence Day ceremony, but she already has her own plans. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Habari za asubuhi Shamila?

Shamila: Salama, u hali gani?

Joseph: Niko salama. Mimi pamoja na wanafunzi wengine tunapanga kuhudhuria Siku ya Uhuru wa Tanzania kisha tutaenda kwenye makavazi ya Azimio la Arusha saa tisa za mchana. Baadaye tutaenda kwenye hoteli moja mjini kubarizi. Ningependa kukualika kwa sherehe hiyo na shughuli zitakazofuata baadaye.

Shamila: Je, sherehe itaanza saa ngapi?

Joseph: Mwaka huu, sherehe itaanza saa nne za mchana hadi saa nane.

Shamila: Samahani sana sitaweza kufika kwa sherehe wakati huo kwa sababu nimepanga kwenda kijijini kuhudhuria sherehe ya ndoa katika familia ya Bibi Farida. Lakini nitajaribu kufika kwenye hoteli baadaye.

Joseph: Hamna neno. Ninaelewa kuwa ulikuwa na mipango mingine. Nitakuarifu hoteli tutakayokuwa na ninatumaini utaweza kufika tuburudike pamoja.

Shamila: Sawa. Ninashukuru kwa mwaliko na ninatumaini tutaonana baadaye.

1. Joseph anamwalika Shamila kwa sherehe gani?
2. Kwa nini Shamila hataweza kuhudhuria sherehe hiyo?
3. Sherehe hiyo itaanza na kuisha saa ngapi?
4. Joseph na rafiki zake wanapanga kufanya nini baada ya sherehe?
5. Shamila na Joseph wataonana saa ngapi?



Zoezi L

One of your classmates calls to invite you to a party being held that evening. Unfortunately, you already have plans and have to decline the invitation. As it turns out, you are planning to hold a party of your own next weekend, so describe your plans and invite the friend to attend.



Zoezi M

Write a short email inviting your East African friends to a holiday celebration typical of your culture. Describe the holiday so that they know what to expect. Make sure to include information about when and where they need to come and whether they are expected to bring anything.



Zoezi N

Shamila has been writing a journal entry based on some of the activities she has participated in during her visit in East Africa. Read the selection from her journal entry about the wedding she attended and answer the questions that follow.



Picha 1: Hapa tulikuwa tunahudhuria sherehe ya harusi. Bwana na Bibi harusi walipewa zawadi kadha wa kadha. Walipewa vyombo vya nyumba, godoro, makochi, na bahasha za pesa. Sherehe ya harusi ilifanyika kanisani ambapo kulikuwa na watu zaidi ya mia mbili. Baada ya sherehe ya kanisani kulikuwa na sherehe nyumbani kwa wazazi wa bwana harusi. Watu walikula vyakula vingi, walicheza dansi na kuwapa maharusi mawaidha.

Picha 2: Hii ni sherehe ya kuchumbiana ya binamu yake Yusufu iliyofanyika mjini Dodoma kabla ya harusi yao. Kwenye sherehe hii, akina mama huwalisha binti zao kanga na kuwafunika kwenye kichwa, uso hadi miguuni. Sherehe hii ni muhimu sana kwa mwanamwali. Bwana harusi mtarajiwa anahitaji kuchagua mpenzi wake kati ya wasichana wengi waliofunikwa kanga.

1. Unafikiri Bwana na Bibi harusi walipewa zawadi gani?
2. Sherehe ya posa ya binamu yake Yusufu ilifanyika wapi?
3. Kwa nini akina mama huwavalisha binti zao kanga, kwenye sherehe ya posa?
4. Bwana harusi mtarajiwa anahitaji kufanya nini siku ya posa?
5. Eleza kuhusu sherehe ya posa katika jamii yako?
6. Eleza tofauti za sherehe ya posa katika jamii yako na jamii za Afrika Mashariki?
7. Eleza kwa kifupi kuhusu sherehe za harusi katika jamii yako.



Zoezi O

Write a detailed essay about a cultural celebration in your culture. Include a brief historical background of the celebration, its cultural significance, when and how it is celebrated and common activities that take place during the celebration. Highlight any similarities and differences in the celebration in your culture and those you have learned about in East Africa.

Key Vocabulary

Nouns

asili	origin
bibi harusi/arusi	bride
burudani	entertainment
bwana harusi/arusi	bridegroom
chumbia	engage
desturi; mila	custom
Eid al-Fitr; Eid el Fitri	Idd holiday
fungate	honeymoon
furaha	happiness
harusi; arusi-	wedding
hotuba	speech
huzuni	sadness
jando	initiation rites for men
kanga;leso	a colorful decorated piece of cloth
kienyeji	indigenous
jadi	traditional
kitambaa	a piece of cloth or material
krismasi; noeli	Christmas
kubalehe	coming of age
kumbukumbu	memorial
likizo	holiday
maandalizi; matayarisho	preparations
mafanikio	success
mahafali	graduation
mapambo	decorations
mapinduzi	revolution
matanga	funeral
mtandio	head scarf
maziko	burial
mazishi	funeral
muziki	music
mwaliko	invitation
ndoa	marriage
ngoma	traditional dance
nyimbo	songs
Pasaka	Easter
posa	marriage proposal
karamu	party
ratiba	program
sala; maombi	prayers
serikali	government
sherehe	festivity, celebration, ceremony
sherehe ya kupewa jina	naming ceremony
shukrani	gratitude; thank you
Siku ya Baba	Father's Day
Siku ya Jamhuri	Republic/Independence Day
Siku ya Kuzaliwa	birthday
Siku ya Mama	Mother's Day

Siku ya Mapinduzi Zanzibar Revolution Day
Siku ya Mashujaa Hero's Day
Siku ya Mwalimu Nyerere Nyerere Day
Siku ya Wafanyikazi Labor Day
Siku ya Wakulima Farmers Day
Siku ya Wapendanao Valentines Day
sikukuu holiday
Sikukuu ya Madaraka Madaraka Day
tuzo award
unyago initiation rites for women
utamaduni culture
wosia advice
zawadi gift

Verbs

-adhimisha to commemorate
-agiza to order
-alika to invite
-ambatisha to enclose; to attach
-andaa to prepare
-bembeleza to soothe; to calm down
-choka to get tired
-dhihirisha to confirm
-fika to arrive
-fikisha to deliver
-funga to close; to fast
-furahi to be happy
-hudhuria to attend
-huzunika to be sad
-imba to sing
-karibisha to welcome
-kumbuka to remember
-kutoa hotuba; hutubia to deliver a speech
-lia to cry
-ng'aa to shine or dazzle
-oa to marry
-oana to get married to each other
-olewa to get married
-omboleza to mourn
-ondoa to remove
-ondoka to leave
-pamba; rembesha to decorate
-peleka to take
-piga makofi to clap
-pokea to receive
-shangilia to cheer
-sherehekea to celebrate
-shukuru to thank
-sikiliza to listen
-swali to pray
-tambua to identify; to recognize

-tambulisha to introduce
-tuza to award

Key Phrases

Asante kwa mwaliko wako. Lakini, ninasikitika kwamba sitaweza kufika. Thank you for your invitation. But I regret that I will not be able to attend.

Furahieni ndoa yenu. Enjoy your marriage.

Heri ya Sikukuu Happy holiday.

Heri za Krisimasi. Merry/Happy Christmas

Heri za Mwaka Mpya. Happy New Year

Hongera! Congratulations!

Idd Mubarak. Happy Eid.

Kesho ni sikukuu gani? What holiday is tomorrow?

Kesho ni Sikukuu ya Krismasi. Tomorrow is Christmas holiday.

Kila la heri! Good luck!

Kulikuwa na watu wengi/wachache kwenye sherehe.

There were many/few people at the ceremony.

Leo kuna sherehe gani? What celebration do we have today?

Likizo njema! Good Holiday!

Ninatazamia likizo njema! I look forward to a good holiday!

Ningependa kukualika kwa sherehe yangu ya kuzaliwa.

I would like to invite you to my birthday party.

Pasaka njema! Good Easter!

Pole kwa msiba wako. Mola akufariji. Sorry for your loss. May God comfort you.

Sherehe ilifana sana. The ceremony was successful.

Sherehe ilikuwa na fujo/vurugu nyingi. The ceremony had a lot of disorder/chaos.

Sherehe ilikuwa na shughuli nyingi. The ceremony was busy.

Sherehe ilikuwa ndefu/fupi. The ceremony was long/short.

Sherehe njema! Good celebration!

Tuko nawe/nanyi. We are with you/you have our sympathies.

Wewe husherehekea Sikukuu ya Shukrani vipi?

How do you celebrate Thanksgiving Holiday?

Sources

6.1 Afya na Magonjwa

- Zoezi R text on malaria is adapted and translated from the Mayo Clinic. Original text is copyrighted. Last accessed 5/23/2023. <https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/malaria/symptoms-causes/syc-20351184>.
- “Mosquito” by Jim Gathany is in the Public Domain. Last accessed 5/23/2023. <https://phil.cdc.gov/details.aspx?pid=5814>.
- Screen capture from “Malaria No More Sing-Along” by Ubongo Kids. Last accessed 5/25/2023. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6DzwoN7OfAs>.

6.2 Mavazi na maumbile

- T-shirt, jacket, blouse, dress, jeans, skirt, shorts, pants and high-heeled shoes by Anna Boyles of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under a CC BY NC ND. First used in *Mezhdunami* (<https://mezhdunami.org>).
- Dera and bra by Jaycie Novak of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under CC BY NC.
- Shirt, tie, sweater, baseball cap, belt by Anna Boyles of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under a CC BY NC ND. First used in *Mezhdunami* (<https://mezhdunami.org>).
- Kanzu, suit and vest by Jaycie Novak of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under CC BY NC.
- Glasses and necklace by Anna Boyles of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under a CC BY NC ND. First used in *Mezhdunami* (<https://mezhdunami.org>).
- Bracelet, ring, henna and handbag by Jaycie Novak of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under CC BY NC.
- “Fashion Africa Seminar – Nairobi Launch by Myndz Community” by Myndz Community is licensed under CC BY ND 2.0. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/myndzcommunity/8144213637>. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Lupita Nyong’o Vogue cover, January 2018. Photographed by Mikael Jansson. All rights reserved by Condé Nast. <https://www.vogue.com/article/lupita-nyong-black-panther-vogue-january-2018-issue>. Last accessed 10/27/2023.
- “Masai Market Nairobi” by Ninaras is licensed under CC BY SA. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Masai_Market_Nairobi_02.jpg. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
-

6.3 Leo Hali ya Hewa Iko Vipi?

- “Weather Icons” by Matthew Petroff are licensed under a CC0 (public domain). https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Weather_Icons.png. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Screen capture from “Utabiri wa Hali ya Hewa 24.11.2022” by Meteo Tanzania. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7C5DGiitkBc>. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Screen capture from “Utabiri wa Hali ya Hewa” by KBC Channel 1. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UBfGEeRhYdQ>. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Screen capture from “Utabiri wa Hali ya Hewa” by KBC Channel 1. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UBfGEeRhYdQ>. Last accessed 5/25/2023.

6.4 Sherehe

- “Beige Elegance Wedding Invitation” by After.room is released under a Canva Free Content License. Last accessed 10/15/2023. <https://www.canva.com/p/templates/EAFb91IbHjw-beige-elegance-wedding-invitation/>.
- “Vazi la Kanga” class presentation by Macie Rouse, 2020.
- “Woman in kanga from Siyu” by Petr Berka is in the Public Domain. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:KangaSiyu1.jpg>. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- “Kanga, Tanzania, 2011” by Gavrosh is licensed under CC BY SA. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kanga,_Tanzania,_2011.jpg. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Zoezi F article on Ramadan is adapted from “Ramadhan: Nchi gani zina mfungo mrefu au mfupi zaidi duniani?”. All rights reserved by BBC News. <https://www.bbc.com/swahili/articles/cyx0wzn31e2o>. Last accessed 6/1/2023.
- Wedding pictures by Brenda Wawire are licensed under CC BY NC.

7. Somo la saba

Safari na Starehe

Essential Questions:

1. How is transport similar or different in various societies?
2. To what extent does transport affect the economy in East African communities versus in your culture?
3. How does social status determine the modes of transport used by different people?
4. What is the role of governance and economic development in determining the transport systems of different countries?
5. How is leisure perceived in different communities?
6. What impact does culture have on leisure activities across East Africa and in your country?

Stage One:

By the end of this unit, students should be able to:

- talk about the various means of transportation one might use in East Africa versus their communities (Interpersonal speaking);
- ask for and give directions (Interpersonal speaking);
- from an oral or written text identify directions from one place to another (Interpretive reading or listening);
- ask and answer questions about travel preferences (Interpersonal speaking);
- exchange information with a travel agent in order to make a reservation (Interpersonal speaking);
- compare and contrast transport systems and practices in East Africa and in their communities (Cultural comparisons);
- present information about the transport systems in East Africa and their communities (Presentational speaking or writing);
- ask and answer questions about leisure activities in East Africa (Interpersonal speaking);
- identify leisure activities and entertainment preferences in East Africa and their culture from an oral or written text (Interpretive reading or listening);
- compare and contrast leisure activities and entertainment in East Africa and their communities (Cultural comparisons);
- present information about leisure and entertainment in East Africa (Presentational speaking or writing);
- ask questions about important features of tourist attractions (Interpersonal speaking);
- identify information about tourist attractions, leisure activities, and travel plans from a written or oral text (Interpretive reading or listening);
- present a hypothetical trip by giving information about the location, cost, means of transport, attractions, and duration of stay (Presentational speaking or writing);
- compare and contrast travel destinations in East Africa and in their communities (Cultural comparisons).

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students will identify different types of transport from written or oral texts. Students will identify directions from one place to another from an oral or written text. Students will identify key details from different tourist attractions in a written text. Students will identify key details of leisure and entertainment from a written text. Students will identify a travel destination of their choice from the internet and give 3 or 4 reasons as to why they would like to visit the destination.	Students will ask for and receive directions on how to get from one place to another. Students will ask classmates about their travel preferences, including the desired location, means of transportation, time of year and planned itinerary. Students will discuss their favorite trips with classmates. Students will work in pairs to simulate a call to a travel agency to make a reservation for a trip within East Africa. Students will simulate a phone call to a hotel to make a reservation. Students will describe their desired travel destinations in East Africa and be prepared to retell the descriptions to at least two partners. Students will exchange information about their leisure and entertainment preferences.	Students will write a report about a trip to selected places in East Africa. Students will present information about transportation in East Africa. Students will create a digital collage to give a presentation on a famous East African wildlife attraction. The presentation will include the name of the attraction, location, historical information and animals found there. Students will give a detailed presentation about a planned trip to East Africa, including attractions that will be visited, travel companions, hotel and restaurant plans and other logistics. Students will make a class presentation about leisure activities and entertainment in East Africa.

Stage Three:

What activities will students participate in to prepare them to demonstrate what they know and can do?

7.1 Usafiri



Zoezi A



miguu



sketibodi



baiskeli



pikipiki/bodaboda



tuktuk/bajaji



gari/motokaa



teksi



basi



matatu



daladala



ndege



treni

Shamila asks her host mother about how she gets around town on a daily basis. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Habari za jioni bibi Farida?

Farida: Salama sana Shamila. Una mipango gani jioni hii?

Shamila: Mimi na wanafunzi wengine katika darasa la Kiswahili tunapanga kwenda jijini. Wasanii wengi maarufu kutoka Afrika Mashariki kama vile Zuchu, Diamond Platinumz, Sauti Sol, na wengineo watawatumbuiza watu kwenye Tamasha za Suluhu.

Farida: Safi kabisa. Hoteli ya Magogoni Magharibi iko mbali kidogo kutoka hapa jijini. Mtatumia usafiri gani kwenda huko? Kuna aina mbalimbali za usafiri kutoka jiji la Dar es Salaam hadi Mji wa Magogoni.

Shamila: Je, wewe unapenda kutumia usafiri gani unaposafiri kwenda miji ambayo haiko mbali sana na jiji la Dar es Salaam.

Farida: Mimi hutumia daladala au wakati mwingine nikiwa na shughuli za kikazi mimi hupenda kutumia teksi. Lakini ninaposafiri humu jijini Dar es Salaam mimi hutumia bajaji kwa sababu huwa haraka na pia huweza kupita katika msongamano wa magari kwa urahisi. Je, mtaenda Mji wa Magogoni kwa usafiri gani?

Shamila: Tumekubaliana kutumia teksi kwa sababu tutarudi usiku wa manane.

Farida: Hiyo ni sawa kabisa. Ninawatakia burudani safi.

Shamila: Asante sana bibi Farida. Uwe na jioni njema pia.

1. Shamila ataenda wapi jioni hii?
2. Shamila anapanga kwenda pamoja na nani?
3. Bibi Farida hutumia usafiri gani anaposafiri kwenye miji iliyo mbali na jiji kuu la Dar es Salaam?
4. Bibi Farida hutumia usafiri gani anaposafiri kwenye miji iliyo karibu na jiji kuu la Dar es Salaam?
5. Shamila watatumia usafiri gani kwenda Mji wa Magogoni na kwa nini?



Zoezi B

Joseph calls one of his East African friends who lives in California. After exchanging greetings they talk about Joseph's travel preferences in Tanzania. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.

1. Joseph anaenda wapi sasa?
2. Joseph anaenda kufanya nini?
3. Joseph anatumia usafiri gani?
4. Joseph anapoenda miji iliyo karibu na Dar es Salaam yeye hupenda kutumia usafiri gani?
5. Joseph hapendi kutumia usafiri gani na kwa nini?
6. Kwa nini Joseph anapenda usafiri wa umma?
7. Kwa nini Juma hapendi kusafiri kwa pikipiki ?



Zoezi C

Poll at least three classmates about the means of transport they prefer to use when traveling locally within cities. Your classmates should explain why they prefer the particular modes of transportation. Be prepared to report back to the class.



Zoezi D

Work with a partner to discuss your experiences with the modes of transport shown below. You might use adverbs of frequency to describe the situation in which you used each mode of transport.



Zoezi E

You are planning to travel to East Africa to study abroad. One of the requirements for you to fulfill is to attend the pre-travel orientation workshops. The next orientation sessions will focus on travel within and across cities in East Africa. One of the presenters is a Kiswahili speaker from East Africa. In pairs prepare at least 10 questions that you will ask the presenter about transportation in East Africa.



Zoezi F

You and a group of friends in your study abroad Kiswahili class are planning to travel locally in Tanzania during the mid-semester break. Discuss your travel plans, including details of where you are going and the means of transport you will use to get there.



Zoezi G

Assume you have been staying in East Africa for approximately six months. During your stay you have traveled to several cities in East Africa. Write a blog to share your experiences.



Zoezi H

Read the short essay on the challenges of using different means of transport in East Africa and answer the questions that follow.

Katika nchi ya Kenya na nchi zingine za Afrika Mashariki wasafiri hupata changamoto nyingi sana za usafiri. Hasa kwenye jiji la Nairobi na vilevile miji mikubwa mingine kama Dodoma, Kampala, na Kigali kuna msongamano wa magari kwa kuwa idadi ya magari imeongezeka zaidi na serikali haina pesa za kutosha kujenga barabara zaidi. Wasafiri wengi husafiri kwa matatu nchini Kenya au daladala katika nchi ya Tanzania. Kuna watu wengine ambao husafiri kwa magari ya kibinafsi ingawa ni bei ghali sana kwa sababu wasafiri hao huhitaji kununua mafuta na pia kulipa ada ya kuegesha magari yao. Bei ya mafuta katika nchi nyingi za Afrika Mashariki ni ghali sana. Pia, abiria wanaotumia usafiri wa umma hupata changamoto nyingi. Kwanza, msafiri anahitaji kwenda kwenye kituo cha matatu au dalaladala na ni lazima asubiri hadi gari lijae. Kuna sehemu zingine ambapo wasafiri hutumia gari moshi au treni lakini kuna changamoto kadha zinazowapata watu wanaoamua kutumia treni. Kwanza, gari moshi hupatikana kwenye vituo vichache sana kwa hivyo sio wasafiri wengi wanaoweza kusafiri kwa gari la moshi. Pia mara kwa mara nafasi hazitoshi kwa hivyo watu wanahitaji kusimama na kusongamana sana. Faida za gari la moshi ni kuwa linasafiri kwa haraka zaidi kuliko usafiri wa barabarani kwa kuwa magari husongamana sana hasa katika miji mikubwa ya Afrika Mashariki. Kwa mfano nchini Kenya, gari moshi hutumia takribani dakika thelathini kutoka kituo cha treni cha Syokimau hadi kwenye kituo cha treni cha jiji la Nairobi. Wasafiri wengine hutumia pikipiki au bajaji. Usafiri huu ni wa haraka, una bei nafuu iwapokuwa una hatari zake. Wasafiri wanaweza kupata majeraha iwapo pikipiki itapata ajali. Pia ni ghali zaidi kutumia matatu na haiwezekani kutumia usafiri huu kwenye sehemu zingine nchini. Matajiri na wafanyibiashara mashuhuri hutumia ndege kwa kuwa huenda kwa kasi ingawa bei yake ni ghali sana na hakuna viwanja vya kutosha vya ndege kwenye sehemu zingine nchini.

1. Kwa nini kuna msongamano wa magari kwenye miji mikubwa ya Afrika Mashariki?
2. Watu wanaotumia magari ya kibinafsi hupata changamoto zipi?
3. Abiria wanaotumia usafiri wa umma hupata changamoto zipi?
4. Faida za usafiri wa gari la moshi ni gani?
5. Usafiri wa pikipiki au bajaji una faida na hatari zipi?
6. Ni watu wa aina gani ambao hutumia usafiri wa ndege? Eleza kwa nini?
7. Ni matatizo yapi yaliyomo kwenye usafiri wa ndege?
8. Wewe hupenda kutumia aina gani za usafiri na kwa nini?
9. Katika jamii yako kuna njia zipi za usafiri ambazo hutumiwa sana?



Zoezi I

Read the brief news article below and answer the questions that follow.

Viongozi wajadiliana kuhusu upanuzi wa sekta ya usafiri

Miaka michache iliyopita, aliyekuwa Rais wa nchi ya Kenya pamoja na mke wake, na maofisa wakubwa wa serikali walipanga safari ya kwenda mjini Washington kumtembelea aliyekuwa Rais wa Marekani Donald Trump. Malengo ya safari hii yalikuwa kuzungumzia masuala mbalimbali ya maendeleo hasa jinsi ya kukuza biashara na kuimarisha usalama katika Afrika Mashariki. Baada ya mazungumzo, Bwana Uhuru Kenyatta alitoa taarifa kuwa walikubaliana kuboresha ufungamano wao wa miaka mingi na Marekani katika biashara, uwekezaji na usalama. Miongoni mwa ushirikiano likiwa swala la kupanga mikakati ya kupea kampuni za marekani kandarasi za ujenzi wa barabara za kisasa, kwa mfano kutoka Nairobi hadi Mombasa, na njia za kuufadhili ujenzi huo. Viongozi hao wawili walikubaliana kuanzishwa kwa safari za ndege za moja kwa moja kutoka Nairobi hadi New York ili kunufaisha biashara, uchumi na utalii kati ya nchi zote mbili. Ingawa tiketi za usafiri huu ni ghali muda wa kusafiri kutoka jiji la Nairobi hadi jiji la New York umepunguzwa kwa takribani saa tatu. Jambo hili limewavutia abiria kutoka kwa mashirika na kampuni mbalimbali pamoja na watalii wa hadhi kufika Kenya na Afrika Mashariki, na bila shaka limeinua uchumi na kuleta maendeleo kwa kiwango fulani.



1. Ni watu gani walisafiri pamoja na Rais Uhuru Kenyatta alipokwenda Marekani?
2. Malengo makubwa ya safari ya Marekani ya aliyekuwa Rais wa Kenya, Bwana Uhuru Kenyatta yalikuwa ni yapi?
3. Nchi ya Kenya na ya Marekani zilikubaliana kushirikiana kwa njia zipi?
4. Muda wa kusafiri kutoka jiji la Nairobi hadi New York umepunguzwa kwa saa ngapi?
5. Kuanzishwa kwa safari ya ndege ya moja kwa moja kutoka Nairobi hadi New York kumechangia vipi katika biashara, uchumi na maendeleo ya nchi hizi?
6. Iwapo ungepanga safari ya kwenda Afrika Mashariki, ungetumia ndege ya moja kwa moja au ndege tofauti? Eleza kwa nini?

Cultural Explorations

Watch the two documentaries on *matatus*, the brightly colored buses that dominate public transportation in cities like Nairobi. Decorated with graffiti-inspired art and promoting a range of local musicians, they are a clear expression of East African youth culture. When you have watched both videos answer the questions that follow.



*Inside the World of
Matwana Matatu Culture*
CNN Feature



tinyurl.com/4n4xc6fx



Matatu: My life, My Art
CGTN Africa



tinyurl.com/4r7d2xas

1. What is the meaning of the word *matatu*, and what is its origin?
2. How would you describe the *matatu* culture? Are there similar practices around automobiles in your own culture? How do they manifest themselves?
3. There are several catch phrases that are popular on matatus. These include “*Kama una haraka shuka ukimbie*” (If you are in a hurry, alight and run) and *Hatusemi wewe ni mnono lakini ukikalia viti viwili lipia* (We are not saying you are plump, but when you sit on two seats, you need to pay for them). *Kama sauti ya muziki iko juu wewe ni mzee*. (If the music is too loud, you’re too old). What is the purpose of these expressions?
4. Why are *matatus* referred to as moving museums?
5. Why do you think the majority of the music played in the *nganyas*, the modern, fancy and pimped-out *matatus* is hip-hop and reggae? Are there particular types of music that are associated with particular types of automobiles in your culture?



Zoezi J

Prepare a presentation that compares and contrasts the common means of transport in East Africa (private vs public) to the common means of transport in your culture. Be prepared to answer questions from the audience.



Zoezi K

Joseph is traveling to Arusha over the weekend and needs to buy a bus ticket. Read his conversation with the sales agent and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Habari za asubuhi?

Wakala Mauzo: Salama sana. Nikusaidiaje?

Joseph: Ningependa kukata tiketi ya basi la jioni. Ninaweza kuhifadhi kiti cha usafiri?

Wakala mauzo: Ndiyo. Kuna basi litakaloondoka saa moja unusu za jioni na kuna jingine la saa nne kamili? Ungependa kuondoka saa ngapi?

Joseph: Safari ni ya saa ngapi kutoka Dar es Salaam hadi Arusha?

Wakala wa mauzo: Safari itachukua saa kumi na nusu kufika Arusha.

Joseph: Sawa, ningependa kuondoka saa moja unusu za jioni. Nauli ni pesa ngapi?

Wakala wa mauzo: Unahitaji tiketi ngapi?

Joseph: Ninasafiri pekee yangu.

Wakala wa mauzo: Sawa. Tafadhali lipa shilingi elfu ishirini na nne, mia tatu na hamsini.

Joseph: Pesa zako ndizo hizi.

Wakala wa mauzo: Asante. Ungependa kiti kipi? Tazama picha hii ya viti vya basi.

Joseph: Kiti nambari kumi ni sawa. Ninafikiri ni sehemu nzuri ili niweze kulala kwa kuwa safari ni ndefu sana.

Wakala wa mauzo: Subiri kwa dakika tano ili nikuhifadhie tiketi yako.

Joseph: Sawa. Hamna neno.

Wakala wa mauzo: Tiketi yako ndiyo hii. Unaruhusiwa begi moja kubwa na mkoba mdogo bila malipo kulingana na sheria za mizigo ya kampuni yetu. Kama utahitaji kubeba mizigo zaidi, unaweza kulipia kila begi shilingi elfu tano.

Joseph: Sawa. Nina begi moja kubwa. Je, nitahitaji kufika kwenye kituo cha basi muda gani kabla ya basi kuondoka?

Wakala wa mauzo: Utahitaji kufika kwenye kituo cha basi dakika thelathini kabla ya safari kuanza.

1. Joseph alitaka kuondoka saa ngapi?
2. Nauli ya tiketi ilikuwa pesa ngapi?
3. Joseph alihifadhiwa kiti nambari gani?
4. Safari ya kutoka Dar es Salaam hadi Arusha ingechukua muda gani?
5. Kulingana na sheria za mizigo ya kampuni ya Kilimanjaro Bus Services, msafari aliruhusiwa kubeba begi ngapi?
6. Mhudumu alimshauri Joseph kufika kwenye kituo cha basi saa ngapi?



Zoezi L

Your friend is planning to go to Kisumu this weekend and has asked you to come along. She has already bought a bus ticket and is hoping that you can travel together. Using the blank ticket below as a guide, come up with at least five questions to be sure you make your reservation for the right bus.

 Travel Simple and hassle free www.emanamba.com Sakura Samaki Investments Company Ltd. 13th Floor, Parklands Avenue, Parklands TEL: 020-36724120 Email: info@ssanics.com Nairobi, Kenya	Easy Coach Services Nairobi, Nairobi. TEL: 3185 - 00200 Email: booking.clerk@ssanics.com		R/No: ECH-65605-01 P/No: ECH-65605-01-P-1	
	FROM	TO		
	PASSENGER	GENDER:	SEAT No.	
	BOOKING BY	DEPARTURE DATE		
	PHONE	DEPARTURE TIME		
	PAYMENT MODE	EMAIL		
	BOOKING DATE	TOTAL FARE		
	Please report to the boarding stations customer care desk at least 30 minutes before the departure time to collect your boarding pass			
	Coupon No: 1050588907 . Use this coupon number to get KES 50 discount if you book before May 31st.			



Zoezi M

Using the information that you learned in the preceding exercise, you need to buy a ticket for your weekend trip. Your teacher will play the role of the ticketing agent and may introduce complications to your plans. Role-play the task.



Zoezi N

You and your friend are caught in a traffic jam and will miss the bus for your weekend trip. Call the booking office and ask whether you can get a refund or reschedule your ticket for the next bus.



Zoezi O

Read Shamila and Joseph's conversation about her trip to Dodoma and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Habari za siku nyingi?

Joseph: Salama, habari za wikendi?

Shamila: Njema. Nilienda kwenye mji wa Dodoma.

Joseph: Ulisafiri kwa njia gani?

Shamila: Nilienda kwa basi.

Joseph: Je, safari ya basi ilikuwa ndefu?

Shamila: Ndiyo, safari ilichukua muda mrefu kwa kuwa kulikuwa na msongamano wa magari.

Joseph: Mimi sipendi msongamano wa magari. Mbona hukusafiri kwa ndege au treni?

Shamila: Usafiri wa ndege ni bei ghali sana.

Joseph: Uliporudi ulitumia usafiri gani?

Shamila: Niliporudi ilibidi nisafiri kwa treni kutoka Dodoma hadi Dar es Salaam

Joseph: Je, nauli ya treni ni bei ghali?

Shamila: Hapana nauli ya treni ni bei nafuu kuliko usafiri wa ndege ingawa ni ghali kidogo kuliko nauli ya basi.

Joseph: Ulisafiriye kutoka kwenye kituo cha treni jijini Dar es Salaam hadi nyumbani kwenu?

Shamila: Nilisafiri kwa bajaji kwa kuwa sikuwa na pesa za kutosha kulipia tekski.

Joseph: Ninafikiri huo ulikuwa uamuzi mzuri.

Shamila: Kulikuwa mchana kwa hivyo usafiri wa bajaji ulikuwa salama. Ningetumia teski au Uber kama ingekuwa usiku.

Joseph: Utanieleza zaidi kuhusu safari yako.

Shamila: Bila shaka. Kwaheri.

Joseph: Kwaheri.

1. Shamila alitumia usafiri gani kwenda Dodoma?
2. Kwa nini Shamila hakusafiri kwa basi aliporudi Dar es Salaam?
3. Mbona Shamila hakusafiri kwa ndege au treni?
4. Kati ya usafiri wa ndege na treni, ni usafiri gani ambao ni wa bei nafuu?
5. Kwa nini Shamila hakutumia tesksi au Uber kutoka jiji la Dar es Salaam hadi nyumbani kwao?
6. Je, kuna aina yoyote ya usafiri ambao wewe hupendi? Eleza kwa nini?



Zoezi P

Shamila wrote a blog post about a recent weekend trip. Read the post and answer the questions that follow.

Mimi niliamka saa moja asubuhi. Nikajitayarisha, nikala chakula cha asubuhi, kisha nikaenda kwenye kituo cha basi. Nilipanda basi saa mbili kamili asubuhi na safari ilichukua muda mrefu kutoka jiji la Dar es Salaam hadi mji wa Dodoma kwa kuwa barabara haikuwa nzuri na kulikuwa na magari mengi sana. Baada ya kufika mji wa Dodoma tulikutana na rafiki yangu Mustafa, ambaye tulienda naye kutembelea sehemu tofauti tofauti. Kwanza tulienda kwenye Nyerere Square, saa saba mchana hadi saa nane mchana. Tuliamua kutumia bajaji kwa kuwa ilikuwa bei nafuu na umbali wa kilomita mbili pekee kutoka kwenye kituo cha basi. Baadaye, tulienda kula chakula cha mchana saa nane mchana hadi saa tisa mchana. Mwishowe, tulienda kwenye msikiti wa Gaddafi ambao ni mkubwa zaidi nchini Tanzania na wa pili kwa ukubwa katika eneo la Afrika Mashariki kutoka saa tisa mchana hadi saa kumi na moja jioni. Baada ya kutoka kwenye msikiti tulikuwa tumechoka sana kwa hivyo nilitumia daladala kwenda kwenye kituo cha treni ili nirudi nyumbani mapema.

1. Rafiki yake Shamila anayekaa Dodoma anaitwa nani?
2. Shamila walienda wapi kutoka saa saba mchana hadi saa nane mchana?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na rafiki yake waliamua kutumia bajaji badala ya usafiri mwingine kutoka kituo cha basi hadi kwenye Nyerere Square?
4. Shamila walitembelea sehemu gani nyingine baada ya kuzuru Nyerere Square?
5. Shamila alitumia usafiri gani kutoka kwenye msikiti wa Gaddafi hadi kwenye kituo cha treni?
6. Kwa nini Shamila alienda kwenye kituo cha treni mapema?



Zoezi Q

Write a blog post about the bus trip to Kisumu that you took last weekend. Describe your interaction with the sales agent and how the trip went.



Zoezi R

Listen to this news report on transportation and answer the questions that follow.

1. Kabla ya ujenzi wa reli usafirishaji wa bidhaa kutoka ulaya hadi kwenye pwani ya Afrika Mashariki ulikuwa kwa njia gani?
2. Kuweko kwa reli kumesaidiaje nchi ya Kenya na Tanzania?
3. Nchi ya Kenya na Tanzania zimekumbwa na changamoto gani kusafirisha bidhaa zake?
4. Reli ya SGR ya Kenya ilizinduliwa mwaka gani, na ni Rais gani aliyeizindua?
5. Reli ya Kisasa ya Tanzania ina awamu ngapi na itasaidia kuunganisha nchi gani?
6. Mradi wa ujenzi wa SGR ulifadhiliwa na nchi gani?
7. Awamu ya kwanza ya ujenzi wa reli nchini Tanzania inaunganisha miji gani na ni ya kilomita ngapi?
8. Watanzania watapata faida gani mradi wa reli utakapomalizika?
9. Una maoni gani kuhusu umuhimu wa reli kusafirisha bidhaa ukilinganisha na matumizi ya njia zingine za usafirishaji?
10. Kama wewe ndiye waziri wa usafirishaji nchini Kenya, ni mambo gani ambayo ungeyapendekeza serikali ifanye?



Zoezi S

Joseph and Shamila are curious about Sauti za Busara and they watch the documentary *Zanzibar Celebrates: 20 Years of Sauti za Busara*. Watch the documentary with a partner and come up with answers to the following questions. Be prepared to share those answers with the class.



tinyurl.com/yeymxzvb

1. Mwanzilishi na mkurugenzi wa Busara productions anaitwa nani, anatoka nchi gani na alifika Zanzibar mwaka gani?
2. Ni mambo gani yanayovutia sana katika kisiwa cha Zanzibar?
3. Tamasha la kwanza lilianza mwaka gani na lilifanyika wapi?
4. Msanii Eric wainana aliimba wimbo gani?
5. Balozi wa Uswidi, Bibi Elisabeth Jacobsen alisema Tamasha la Sauti za Busara lina umuhimu gani kwa jamii?
6. Bwana Manfredo Haiti alisema tamasha hili lina umuhimu gani?
7. Bibi Anette Otilie kutoka Uswidi alisema tamasha hili linachangia vipi maendeleo na usawa wa kijinsia?
8. Jukwaa la Sauti ya Busara liliwapatia Bibi Siti Amina, Bwana Zenji Boy, Damian Soul na wasanii wengine wa Afrika Mashariki nafasi gani?
9. Tamasha hili limekumbwa na changamoto gani?
10. Tamasha hili limewanufaisha wanabiashara vipi katika mji wa Stone Town?
11. Kulingana na Daktari Omar Abdallah tamasha hili limekuwa na mchango gani wa kimuziki na umuhimu gani kwa jamii kwa jumla?
12. Waziri Simai Mohamed alisema tamasha lilibadilisha takwimu za wageni kwenye mji wa Stone Town vipi?
13. Sauti za Busara ni tamasha nambari ngapi katika Afrika Mashariki, na barani Afrika?
14. Bibi Marion Munga alisema Tamasha la Sauti za Busara lina umuhimu gani?
15. Unafikiri wanamuziki wana mchango gani katika jamii?
16. Kuna tamasha gani maarufu za muziki katika jamii yako?



Zoezi T

Joseph is planning to visit Zanzibar to attend the yearly Sauti za Busara festival. Read Joseph's discussion with Masika about the best way to get there and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Habari za leo kaka?

Masika: Mzima, wewe ukoje?

Joseph: Mimi niko mzima pia. Ninapanga safari ya kwenda kwenye mji wa Stone Town kuhudhuria Tamasha la Sauti za Busara. Ninaweza kutumia usafiri gani kwenda huko?

Masika: Je, ungependa kutumia usafiri wa kibinafsi au wa umma?

Joseph: Ninafikiri itakuwa ghali sana kusafiri kwa tekisi. Kwa hivyo itabidi nitumie usafiri wa umma ili niweze kuokoa pesa kidogo.

Masika: Ndiyo, safari ni ndefu kwa kuwa ni lazima upitie kivuko cha Feri cha Stone Town kinachounganisha kisiwa cha Stone Town na kisiwa cha Bongoyo hapa jijini Dar es Salaam. Itakuwa ghali kulipa ada ya kusafirisha tekisi kwenye feri.

Joseph: Ni takriban kilomita ngapi kutoka hapa nyumbani hadi kwenye kivuko cha Bongoyo?

Masika: Ninafikiri ni kilomita sita. Unaweza kutumia bajaji kwa kuwa ni bei nafuu kuliko tekisi. Utakapofika kwenye kivuko cha Bongoyo, utahitaji kutumia feri.

Joseph: Je, kwenye feri ninaweza kulipa pesa taslimu au ninahitaji kununua tiketi?

Masika: Utahitaji kununua tiketi utakapofika kwenye kivuko ili uruhusiwe kutumia feri. Sikumbuki ni bei gani lakini si ghali.

Joseph: Baada ya kufika kwenye kivuko cha feri cha Stone town, ninahitaji kutumia usafiri gani kwenda mjini?

Masika: Unaweza kutumia daladala hadi kwenye kituo cha magari ya umma. Nauli ni takriban shilingi elfu thelathini na moja na mia tano. Huhitaji kununua tiketi bali ortalipa kwa kutumia pesa taslimu.

Joseph: Je, baada ya kufika kwenye kituo cha magari ya umma ninaweza kutembea au ninahitaji kutumia bajaji?

Masika: Unaweza kutembea. Lakini, kwa ajili ya usalama, kama utafika usiku afadhali utumie bajaji kwenda kwenye ukumbi wa tamasha.

Joseph: Asante sana. Nitakupigia simu iwapo nitakuwa na swali lolote.

Masika: Karibu na safari njema. Je, utaenda kwenye tamasha pekee yako?

Joseph: Hapana, tutaenda na Shamila pamoja na wanafunzi wengine wa Kiswahili. Karibu twende na wewe.

Masika: Sijui kama nitaweza kwenda. Nitakupigia simu kesho kukufahamisha iwapo nitaweza kwenda na nyinyi. Mwaka jana tamasha lilikuwa nzuri sana. Kwa hivyo ningependa kuhudhuria tena mwaka huu.

Joseph: Safi, tutaongea baadaye.

1. Joseph anapanga safari ya kwenda wapi?
2. Kwa nini Joseph angependa kutumia usafiri wa umma kuliko usafiri wa kibinafsi?
3. Kutoka nyumbani anakoishi hadi kwenye kivuko cha feri cha Bongoyo ni umbali gani?
4. Je, Joseph atalipa pesa taslimu kwenye kivuko au atahitaji kununua tiketi?
5. Baada ya kufika kwenye kivuko cha mji wa Stone Town, Masika anamshauri Joseph atumie usafiri gani?
6. Unafikiri ni bora Joseph atumie usafiri gani ikiwa atafika kwenye kivuko cha Stone Town mapema?
7. Joseph ataenda kwenye Tamasha la Sauti ya Busara pamoja na nani?
8. Je, Masika ataweza kuhudhuria tamasha la mwaka huu?
9. Kwa nini Masika angependa kwenda kwenye Tamasha la mwaka huu?
10. Je, wewe unapenda kuhudhuria tamasha lolote la muziki? Eleza kwa nini?



Zoezi U

Shamila has decided to accompany Joseph on his trip to the Sauti za Busara festival. Listen to her phone conversation with the travel agent and answer the questions below.

1. Shamila anapanga safari ya kwenda wapi na atatumia usafiri gani?
2. Shamila alinunua tiketi ngapi na watasafiri siku gani?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph wangependa kukaa karibu na jukwaa la forodhani?
4. Kwa nini bei ya chumba cha hoteli ni ghali kwenye mji wa Stone Town?
5. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph hawataweza kula kwenye hoteli watakayokuwa wakikaa?



Zoezi V

Plan a short trip with your partner and come up with a list of questions that you are likely to be asked when contacting the travel agent. At least one group of students will need to act out the situation with the teacher playing the role of the travel agent. If that group gets stuck, they can ask other members of the class for help.



Zoezi W

On your way back home from your trip the bus on which you are traveling breaks down. Call the friend who is picking you up and tell them that you will arrive late.



Zoezi X

Recount a recent trip that you took and describe what happened, including who went on the trip, the planning, and some details of how the trip went. Provide pictures of the trip if you have them. What challenges or unexpected complications did you encounter?

Key Vocabulary

Distance Phrases

karibu near
mbali far
ni karibu it is near
ni karibu kidogo it is a little near
ni karibu sana it is so near
ni mbali it is far
ni mbali kidogo it is a little far
ni mbali sana it is so far
si mbali it is not far
si mbali sana it is not very far

Nouns

abiria passenger(s)
ajenti wa usafiri travel agent
baisikeli bicycle
barabara; njia road; highway
basi bus
bendi band
biashara business
bodaboda; pikipiki bicycle taxi; motorcycle taxi
Bolti Bolt
boti boat
breki breaks
chumba cha abiria passenger lounge; passenger station
dereva driver
dirisha window
farasi horse
gari; motokaa car
gharama cost
grafitti graffiti
tairi tire
helikopta helicopter
jeki jerk
jeti jet
katuni; vibonzo cartoons
kijia foot path
kioo mirror
kiti seat
kituo cha basi bus stop
kituo cha treni train station
kondakta; utingo conductor
lori truck; lorry
mafuta fuel
maji water
malalamishi complaints
malipo payment
manowari submarine

mapambo decorations
mapato revenue; income
matatu; daladala van, minivan, minibus
mekanika mechanic
meli ship
michoro drawings
midundo hits
miguu legs
mkanda seat belt
mlalamishi complainant
mlango door
motokaa car
msafiri traveler
msala bathroom
msanii artists
mteja customer
muziki music
mwanamuziki musician
mwendo speed
mzigo luggage
nahodha captain of a ship
nauli fare
ndege airplane
ngalawa; mashua small boat
ngamia camel
nyimbo songs
pantoni ferry boat
punda donkey
rubani pilot
rukwama; mkokoteni pull cart
safari journey; trip
sanaa art work
sare uniform
sehemu ya mizigo baggage claim
sehemu ya tiketi ticket counter
sehemu/eneo la kupumzika rest area
stesheni ya basi bus station
stesheni ya treni train station
stima steamship
tamasha concert
tanboi turnboy (*An assistant to the driver of public transport or a truck*)
teksi taxi
tiketi ticket
toroli wheelbarrow
trekta tractor
treni; gari (la) moshi train
tuktuku; bajaji tuk tuk
umma public
utamaduni culture
uwanja wa ndege airport
uzani weight

vipandio staircase
vyombo means (of transport)
waimbaji singers
wanabendi band members
wasaidizi; wahudumu wa ndege airline crew

Verbs

-abiri to board
-akisha; washa to start; to turn on
-endesha to drive
-funga to close
-fungua to open
-ghairi; batili to cancel a reservation
-imba to sing
-jaza to fill
-kuhifadhi tiketi to make a ticket reservation
-kata tiketi to pay for a ticket
-kaza to tighten
-keti; -kaa to sit
-kimbia to run
-kwenda to go
-lalamika to complain
-legeza to loosen
-leta to bring
-lipa to pay
-ning'inia to hang
-nunua to buy
-nyamaza to keep quiet
-ondoa to remove
-pandisha to put up
-panga to arrange
-punguza to reduce
-rudisha to take back
-safiri to travel
-shika to hold; to take
-shuka to get out of (a car); alight
-shukisha to drop off a passenger
-shusha to bring down
-simama to stand up
-songa to move
-songesha to move something/someone
-tembea to walk
-tumbuiza to entertain
-tumia to use
-uza to sell
-weka to put; to store
-zima to be off

Key Phrases

Endesha polepole. Drive slowly.

Je, ulifurahia tamasha? Did you enjoy the concert/festival?

Kwa nini ulitumia usafiri huo? Why did you use that means of transport?

Kwa nini unaendesha gari kwa mwendo wa kasi? Why are you driving fast?

Ni umbali gani kutoka hapa? How far is it from here?

Nimefika. I have arrived.

Nimefika salama. I have arrived safely.

Nina malalamishi kuhusu huduma zenu. I have complaints about your services.

Ninashukia pale kituoni. I will get off at the station.

Ningependa kushukia hapa. I would like to alight here.

Nirudishie pesa zilizosalia. Give me my change.

Nishukishe. Drop me off.

Pole kwa ajali. Sorry about the accident.

Punguza mwendo. Slow down.

Punguza sauti. Lower the volume.

Siendi mbali. I am not going far.

Sikufurahia huduma zenu. I was not pleased with your services.

Tafadhali lipa nauli yako. Please pay for your transport.

Tafadhali nipe mizigo yangu. Please give me my luggage.

Tamasha ilikuwaje? How was the concert?

Uliendaje; ulisafiri je? How did you travel?

Ulilipa nauli ya pesa ngapi? How much fare did you pay?

Uliona nini? What did you see?

Ulirudi nyumbani saa ngapi kutoka kwenye tamasha? What time did you return from the concert?

Ulisafiri pamoja na nani? Whom did you travel with?

Ulitumia nini kusafiri? What means of transport did you use?

Ulitumia usafiri gani? What means of transport did you use?

Utaenda Mombasa kwa njia/usafiri gani?

Which means of transport will you use to go to Mombasa?

Utalipaje? How will you pay?

Wasanii gani walikuwepo kwenye tamasha? Which artists were at the concert?

7.2 Starehe na burudani



Zoezi A



On arriving in Stone Town to attend Sauti za Busara festival, Joseph and Shamila check into the hotel where they will be staying.

Mpokezi: Karibu sana hapa kwenye Kasri la Dhow! Poleni kwa safari.

Joseph na Shamila: Asante, tushapoa.

Mpokezi: Tafadhali nipatieni vitambulisho vyenu.

Joseph: Vitambulisho vyetu ndivyo hivi.

Mpokezi: Asante. Tafadhali subirini kidogo ili nipige vitambulisho vyenu chapa.

Joseph: Sawa hamna neno.

Mpokezi: Ninaona mlihifadhiwa vyumba viwili na Furaha Adventures kwa siku tano.

Shamila: Ndiyo, nishalipia vyumba hivyo.

Mpokezi: Je, mngependa kula vyakula vyovyote humu hotelini?

Shamila: Hapana tutakula chakula cha asubuhi tu. Je, kuna migahawa ya bei nafuu hapa karibu ambapo tunaweza kupata vyakula vya kitamaduni?

Mpokezi: Bila shaka. Kuna migahawa mingi inayotayarisha vipochopocho vya vyakula vya kitamaduni.

Shamila: Tunapenda vyakula vya asili ya Tanzania kama pilau, chapati, maharagwe ya nazi, bhajia, mchuzi wa pweza, mishikaki ya nyama na kadhalika.

Joseph: Je, kuna mahali ambapo tunaweza kunywa juisi ya ukwaju na miwa.

Mpokezi: Kwenye chumba kuna nakala ya orodha ya migahawa na nambari za simu mnazoweza kupiga ili kuagiza vyakula vyovyote ambavyo mngenda. Hizi ni funguo za vyumba vyenu. Shamila, chumba chako ni nambari mia tatu na kumi na tisa, na Joseph, chumba chako ni nambari mia tatu ishirini. Vyumba vyenu vimekaribiana sana.

Joseph: Chakula cha asubuhi huanza saa ngapi kila siku?

Mpokezi: Chakula cha asubuhi huanza saa moja asubuhi hadi saa nne asubuhi. Tuna vyakula vizuri sana. Mtavifurahia. Pia mnaweza kupiga simu iliyo chumbani mwenu na kuagiza huduma za chumba au kama mngenda huduma yoyote maalum. Kuna sefu pia ya kuweka vitu vyenye thamani kubwa.

Shamila na Joseph: Asante sana.

Mpokezi: Karibuni kwenye Kasri la Dhow!

1. Unafikiri kwa nini mpokezi alihitaji vitambulisho vya Joseph na Shamila?
2. Ni nani aliyewahifadha Shamila na Joseph nafasi katika Kasri la Dhow?
3. Je, Shamila na Joseph watakaa kwenye Kasri la Dhow kwa siku ngapi?
4. Wageni wanaweza kula chakula cha asubuhi kuanzia saa ngapi?
5. Shamila na Joseph wangependa kula vyakula gani na kwa nini?
6. Kulingana na mpokezi wageni wanaweza kupiga simu kupata huduma za aina gani?
7. Wageni wakiwa na vitu vya thamani wanaweza kuviweka wapi kwenye hoteli?
8. Iwapo una nafasi ya kukaa kwenye hoteli wewe hupenda kula vyakula vya aina gani na kwa nini?



Zoezi B

One student in the class should play the receptionist and check everyone into their rooms. If the class is large, another student (or the teacher) can also help out with the check-in process.



Zoezi C

You have checked into your hotel and the room you have been given is in an unacceptable condition. Call the front desk and tell them what is wrong and ask to have it fixed or to move you to a different room.



Zoezi D



After having lunch in a local restaurant at Stone town, Shamila and Joseph have a short discussion with the waiter about other entertainment options they could participate in, apart from Sauti za Busara. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Mhudumu: Ninatumai mmefurahia chakula chetu. Karibuni sana hapa Stone Town na kwenye mgahawa wetu wa Pemba. Sisi tunafahamika sana kwa chakula chenye afya ambacho ni cha asili ya Kihindi na Kiafrika.

Shamila: Ndiyo, chakula chenu ni kitamu sana.

Mhudumu: Wapishi wetu wana tajriba ya upishi kwa miaka mingi kwenye hoteli za kifahari nchini.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tunashukuru kwa huduma zenu nzuri. Tafadhali tungependa kujua pahali ambapo tunaweza kwenda kujiburudisha.

Mhudumu: Inategemea mnapenda kufanya nini na mko hapa kwa muda gani.

Joseph: Tuko hapa Stone Town kwa siku tatu na tunapenda burudani za aina tofauti tofauti.

Mhudumu: Kama mngependa kwenda kwenye ukumbi wa sinema kutazama filamu, ninafikiri mtafurahia Old Fort inayofahamika kama Ngome Kongwe au House of Wonders. Hii ni nyumba iliyojengwa mwaka wa 1700 na Waarabu.

Shamila: Tutahitaji kutembelea Ngome Kongwe. Je, wanaonyesha filamu kila siku?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, wao huonyesha filamu kila siku. Mtaweza kuona filamu maarufu za Tanzania na za kisasa.

Joseph: Je, kunavyo vilabu vingine ambavyo tunaweza kwenda kucheza densi?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, kuna vilabu kadha wa kadha. Sijaenda kwenye klabu chochote kwa wakati ambao nimekuwa hapa lakini rafiki zangu husema kuwa Dharma Lounge ni kilabu maarufu kwa kuwa kuna aina mbalimbali ya miziki kama Jazz, Raga, Pop, Taarab, Bongo na baadhi ya miziki ya kizazi kipya. Kwenye kilabu hiki wasanii maarufu kutoka Afrika Mashariki kama Sauti Sol, Bobi Wine, Diamond Platnumz, na Fally Ipua huwatumbuiza watu.

Joseph: Je, kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kiko wapi?

Mhudumu: Kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kiko katika mtaa wa Mkunazini. Dereva wa teksi wanajua Dharma Lounge kwa kuwa ni kilabu maarufu sana kwa watalii hasa vijana.

Joseph: Rafiki yangu Shamila pia anapenda kutazama miereka na bendi za muziki. Je, tunaweza kuipata burudani hii hapa mjini?

Mhudumu: Sauti za Busara ni tamasha mwafaka zaidi la kutazama na kusikiliza bendi tofauti za miziki ya Afrika Mashariki na Afrika ya kati. Wanamuziki kutoka sehemu zingine barani Afrika pia huja kuwatumbuiza wageni. Sijui kuhusu miereka lakini nitaulizia kisha nitawapigia simu. Nambari yako simu ni gani?

Joseph: Tunajua kuhusu Sauti za Busara na tushahifadhi tiketi za kwenda kutazama tamasha yao kuanzia leo jioni.

Mhudumu: Vizuri sana. Nina uhakika mtafurahia tamasha hii maarufu sana.

Joseph: Lakini hatujui kuhusu miereka na vilabu vya densi. Unaweza kutufahamisha kuhusu burudani hizi na mahali wanakofanyia maonyesho haya kupitia nambari +255243322407.

Mhudumu: Nitawajulisha kuhusu michezo ya miereka punde nitakapopata habari.

Joseph: Tunashukuru sana. Tutaonana siku nyingine. Kwaheri.

1. Mgahawa wa *Pemba* ni maarufu kwa chakula kipi?
2. Mhudumu anawashauri Joseph na Shamila kwenda kutazama filamu wapi?
3. Ni filamu gani zinazoonyeshwa kwenye ukumbi wa Ngome Kongwe?
4. Kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kiko katika mtaa gani na kwa nini ni maarufu?
5. Shamila anapenda burudani gani?
6. Shamila na Joseph wanatarajia mhudumu awafahamishe nini baadaye?
7. Iwapo ungekuwa unasafiri na Joseph na Shamila ungechagua kwenda kwa burudani gani na kwa nini?



Zoezi E

Work with a partner to come up with a list of fun things to do in your hometown. You will then share your lists with the class and come up with as many suggestions as you can for people who might visit.



Zoezi F

Find out what everyone in the class likes to do in their free time and plan a class outing for this weekend. Be prepared to explain why the entertainment option you like would be the best choice. You will need to highlight the good parts of your choice and the bad parts of what others are suggesting.



Zoezi G

Joseph receives a phone call from the receptionist at Dharma lounge and asks about the activities that are available. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Mhudumu: Hujambo? Ninakupigia simu kutoka kilabu cha Dharma Lounge. Ningependa kuongea na Joseph?

Joseph: Sijambo. Mimi ni Joseph. Habari gani?

Mhudumu: Salama. Mimi ni mpokezi hapa na nimepewa nambari yako na mhudumu kutoka Mgahawa wa Ma Shaa Allah. Unamfahamu? Mlikula chakula leo mchana kwenye mgahawa wao.

Joseph: Ndiyo ninafahamu mhudumu huyo. Tulitaka kujua mahali ambapo kuna maonyesho ya miereka na densi.

Mhudumu: Hapa kwenye kilabu cha Dharma Lounge tuna maonyesho mengi ya miereka na densi na ninajua mtaifurahia.

Joseph: Safi sana. Tiketi za kutazama maonyesho zinapatikana vipi?

Mhudumu: Mtahudhuria maonyesho mkiwa watu wangapi?

Joseph: Tutakuwa watu wawili. Mimi na rafiki yangu.

Mhudumu: Huwa tuna tiketi za aina mbili; ya kwanza ni tiketi ya watu muhimu na ya pili ni ile ya watu wa kawaida.

Joseph: Kuna tofauti gani kati ya tiketi hizi mbili?

Mhudumu: Kwanza, viti vya watu muhimu ni vikubwa na vina starehe zake, pili ukiwa na tiketi za watu muhimu unaweza kuketi sehemu ambayo ni nzuri sana kutazama maonyesho ilhali tiketi za kawaida hazina starehe nyingi sana na pia huna uwezo mzuri wa kutazama maonyesho kwa uwazi.

Joseph: Asante kwa maelezo yako. Bei ya tiketi hizi ni gani?

Mhudumu: Tiketi ya watu muhimu ina gharimu shilingi elfu mia moja na thelathini nayo tiketi ya kawaida ina gharimu shilingi elfu hamsini na tatu.

Joseph: Tungependa kununua tiketi mbili za watu muhimu. Je, nitazilipiaje tiketi hizi mbili?

Mhudumu: Nitayanakili majina yenu kisha nitawakatia tiketi ambazo mtazichukua kesho mkija kutazama maonyesho. Mnaweza kulipa kwa pesa tasilimu kwa kuwa huwa hatupokei malipo ya simu.

Joseph: Sawasawa.

Mhudumu: Majina yenu ni yapi, ili niyaandike kwenye tiketi?

Joseph: Jina langu ni Joseph na rafiki yangu anaitwa Shamila.

Mhudumu: Mngependa kutazama maonyesho ya saa ngapi?

Joseph: Tungependa kuona maonyesho hayo kesho asubuhi kwa kuwa kwenye ratiba yetu tushahifadhi tiketi ya kwenda kuhudhuria tamasha la mwaka huu la Sauti za Busara saa za jioni.

Mhudumu: Usiwe na shaka maanake maonyesho yetu ya kesho ni ya asubuhi kwa hivyo yataingiliani vyema na ratiba yenu.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa muda wako. Tutajiandaa kufika kesho kwenye maonyesho.

1. Kilabu cha Dharma Lounge ni maarufu kwa maonyesho gani?
2. Ni kwa nini Joseph na Shamila waliamua kununua tiketi za bei ghali?
3. Tiketi za aina gani zinapatikana kwenye kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?
4. Kwa nini Joseph alichagua kwenda kwa maonyesho ya asubuhi badala ya jioni?
5. Joseph na Shamila walilipa tiketi zao kwa njia ipi?



Zoezi H

Work with a partner to search the web for popular clubs in Nairobi that you might go to this weekend. Find out if they have shows, food and drink specials, and whether they are budget friendly. Be prepared to share the names of the clubs that you found and give their brief description.



Zoezi I

As a follow up activity, present your top two choices to the class. In your presentation, compare and contrast the two choices and indicate which is your preferred choice and why. At the end, the class will vote on the best choice.



Zoezi J

Shamila has the afternoon free and finds the *Shanga gift shop* online. She calls the phone number on the website to ask for directions.



kushoto



moja kwa moja



kulia

Shamila: Habari gani? Je, hili ni duka la Shanga?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, hili ni duka la Shanga. Ugependa nikusaidiaje vipi?

Shamila: Mimi ni mgeni hapa na ningependa kulitembelea duka lenu la Shanga. Niko katika Kasri la Dhow na sioni duka lenu kwenye ramani ya Google. Je, unaweza kunipa maelekezo ya jinsi ya kufika huko? Singependa kupotea.

Mhudumu: Bila shaka. Kutoka kwenye lango la Kasri la Dhow unahitaji kuelekea upande wa kulia. Nenda moja kwa moja kupitia barabara ya Uhuru, barabara ya Magufuli, na barabara ya Samia na Umoja. Hapo utakuta kivuko cha watu wanaosafiri kwa miguu. Vuka barabara kuelekea upande wa kulia. Endelea na barabara ya Umoja hadi uone benki Kuu ya Equity katika mkono wa kulia. Mbele ya benki Kuu ya Equity utaona jengo kubwa ambalo linaitwa Uzuri Mall. Kutembea kutoka Kasri la Dhow hadi kwenye duka la Shanga ni dakika kumi na tano.

Shamila: Je, duka la Shanga liko ndani ya jengo la Uzuri Mall?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, duka hili liko ndani ya jengo la Uzuri Mall. Duka liko katika orofa ya tatu. Ukifika orofa ya tatu utaona ni duka la kwanza mkono wa kushoto kutoka kwa ngazi.

Shamila: Asante sana kwa maelezo yako mazuri. Ninashukuru sana. Ninapanga kulitembelea duka hilo leo mchana.

Mhudumu: Karibu sana.

1. Je, Shamila anataka kwenda wapi?
2. Kutembea kutoka kwenye Kasri la Dhow hadi dukani inachukua muda gani kwa miguu?
3. Unahitaji kupita barabara zipi kabla ya kufika kwa barabara ya Umoja?
4. Duka ambalo Shamila analitafuata liko wapi kutoka kwenye benki Kuu ya Equity?
5. Eleza jinsi ya kufika kwenye duka la shanga kutoka eneo la kuingilia Uzuri Mall.



Zoezi K



In the evening Joseph and Shamila head to the Dharma Lounge. After walking for a short distance, they decide to ask for directions so that they don't get lost.

Shamila: Shikamoo mama?

Mkazi: Marahaba mwanangu.

Shamila: Sisi si wakazi wa hapa na tunaomba utuelekeze namna ya kufika kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kwa kuwa sisi ni wageni hapa na hatujui njia ya kwenda huko.

Mkazi: Ndiyo, ninaweza kuwaelekeza jinsi mtakavyofika Dharma Lounge kwa kuwa mimi ni mkaazi wa maeneo haya.

Shamila: Tutashukuru sana kwa msaada wako. Ni umbali gani kutoka hapa?

Mkazi: Kutoka hapa mlipo mpaka kilabu cha Dharma Lounge ni masafa ya kutembea kwa miguu na ni mwendo wa kilomita tatu.

Shamila: Kwa hivyo si mbali! Njia rahisi ya kuelekea huko ni ipi?

Mkazi: Kutoka hapa tulipo mnahitaji kutembea nusu kilomita, kisha mtaona kibao ambacho kimeandikwa “Karibu kwa daktari wa Mapenzi”. Mkishaona kibao hiki, pinda kulia na muendelea na barabara hiyo ya lami kwa kilomita mbili. Upane wa kushoto mtaona jengo la rangi ya manjano. Mkishaona jengo hili pideni kushoto na mtembee kwa kilomita moja. Kisha mtaona lango lenye mandhari ya kupendeza ambalo ndani yake mna tangi kubwa la maji lenye rangi ya dhahabu. Kwenye lango hili kuna maandishi ya “Karibu Ulimwengu wa Dharma Lounge”.

Shamila: Asante sana. Ninatumaini hatutapotea. Ninaona si safari ndefu kutoka hapa.

Mkazi: Karibu. Safari njema.

1. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph walihitaji kuelekezwa kwenda kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?
2. Ni umbali gani kutoka Kasri la Dhow kwenda kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?
3. Baada ya kuona kibao kilichoandikwa “*Karibu kwa Daktari wa Mapenzi*”, Shamila na Joseph watahitaji kutembea kwa kilomita ngapi?
4. Jengo la rangi ya manjano liko upande gani wa barabara?
5. Shamila na Joseph watajuaje wamefika kwenye kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?



Zoezi L

Your teacher will give you a map of your campus. Starting at a location that your teacher specifies, give directions to a place of your choosing to your partner. Your partner then needs to give you directions from that place to another place on campus. Repeat the process at least three times. Be prepared to ask questions for clarification.



Zoezi M

Pick out the best example of the directions you created in the last activity and write them out with your partner. Then swap your directions with another group to see if you can guess the place the other group has in mind.



Zoezi N

A few of your classmates are coming to visit you by taxi and call you on the phone because they have gotten lost. Find out where they are and provide directions on how they can get to your place.



Zoezi O

Look at the map below, including the points on the compass. Read the examples and describe where each of the countries listed below are located relative to Tanzania.

Examples:

- (Nchi ya) Uhabeshi iko kaskazini (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
- (Nchi ya) Malawi iko kusini (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
- (Nchi ya) Somalia iko mashariki (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
- (Nchi ya) Uganda iko magharibi (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
- (Nchi ya) Angola iko kusini magharibi (mwa nchi) ya Ethiopia.

1. Chad
2. Niger
3. Botswana
4. Senegal
5. Zambia
6. Egypt
7. Uganda
8. Namibia
9. Ghana
10. Rwanda
11. Burundi
12. Democratic Republic of Congo
13. Kenya
14. South Africa
15. Nigeria





Zoezi P

You meet a new student who would like to know a bit more about where you live. Role-play the situation with the curious new acquaintance. A few questions below have been listed to get you started but see how many more you can come up with.

Examples:

- Unatoka wapi?
- Unatoka sehemu gani Marekani?
Magharibi ya kati? Pwani? Pwani ya magharibi? Pwani ya mashariki? Kusini?
- Unaishi sehemu gani ya Kansas?
- Je, sehemu hiyo iko karibu na mji wa Kansas?



Zoezi Q

When they get to the Dharma Lounge, Joseph and Shamila go to the reception to pay for the tickets they have reserved. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Hujambo? Ninaitwa Joseph na mwenzangu hapa anaitwa Shamila. Tulikuwa tumehifadhiwa tiketi mbili za maonyesho na tungependa kuzilipia tiketi hizo.

Mhudumu: Sijambo. Ninakukumbuka. Tiketi zenu ziko hapa. Kwa jumla mnahitaji kulipa shilingi elfu mia mbili na sitini.

Joseph: Hela ndizo hizi hapa. Tunashukuru kwa mapokezi yenu mema.

Mhudumu: Karibuni sana. Subirini kidogo niwape mtu atakayewaelekeza kwenye viti vyenu.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa huduma zenu nzuri.

Shamila: Joseph, ratiba yako ya kesho asubuhi ni ipi?

Joseph: Kwa kweli sina mpango wowote.

Jirani: Poleni kwa kuingilia mazungumzo yenu. Ninaomba kupendekeza kama mnaweza kuhudhuria mechi ya mpira wa kandanda kati ya timu ya *Harambee Stars* ya Kenya na timu ya Yanga ya Tanzania. Mechi itafanyika kesho na itaanza muda wa asubuhi. Hizi ni timu mbili bora zaidi kwenye soka katika eneo la Afrika Mashariki.

Joseph: Hilo ni wazo nzuri kwa kuwa tunapenda sana kandanda. Mimi na rafiki yangu tungependa kutazama timu hizi pinzani. Je, unajua, mchuano huo utafanyika wapi, saa ngapi na ni vipi mtu anaweza kupata tiketi za kuutazama?

Jirani: Mchuano huo utakuwa katika uwanja wa *Amaan*, kuanzia saa tatu asubuhi hadi saa tano na nusu asubuhi. Tiketi zinanunuliwa mtandaoni kupitia kwa simu kwa kubonyeza nambari ifuatayo *243# halafu ufuate maelekezo. Tiketi zenyewe ni za bei nafuu sana kwa kuwa kama unanunua tiketi zaidi ya moja, utapunguziwa asilimia hamsini ya malipo kwa tiketi ya pili.

Shamila: Tiketi moja inauzwa pesa ngapi?

Jirani: Tiketi moja inauzwa shilingi elfu mia moja na hamsini. Kwa hivyo, iwapo mko watu wawili mtalipa shilingi elfu mia mbili na ishirini na tano.

Shamila: Hiyo ni bei nafuu.

1. Shamila na Joseph walihitaji kulipa pesa ngapi kwa tiketi mbili za maonyesho kwenye Dharma Lounge?
2. Ni timu gani zitakazokuwa zikicheza mechi ya mpira wa kandanda?
3. Je, mechi inatarajiwa kuanza saa ngapi?
4. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph waliuziwa tiketi kwa bei nafuu?
5. Mchuano huu utachezwa katika uwanja upi?
6. Tiketi hizi zitanunuliwa kwa njia gani?
7. Je, umewahi kuhudhuria mechi yoyote ya michezo chuoni mwako? Eleza namna ya kununua tiketi za michezo chuoni mwako?



Zoezi R

Pretend that you accompanied Joseph and Shamila to the Dharma Lounge to watch the dancing and wrestling show. You found everything too loud, and it was so hot and stuffy that you had to leave before the show ended. Call the Dharma Lounge manager to share your experience and ask whether you might get a complimentary ticket to attend another show.



Zoezi S

The day after the concert Joseph and Shamila decided to go to *Amaan* stadium to attend a football match between *Harambee Stars* and *Yanga*. As they wait for the match to kick off, they have a conversation with one of the fans. The fan gives them the history of both teams. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shabiki: Mko vipi wenzangu?

Joseph: Tuko poa.

Shabiki: Karibuni kwenye mechi ya leo. Ni mara yenu ya kwanza kuhudhuria mechi kwenye uwanja huu au mmeshahudhuria michuano hapo awali?

Joseph: La hasha! Hii ndiyo mara yetu ya kwanza.

Shabiki: Je, nyinyi ni wageni hapa Zanzibar?

Joseph: Ndiyo, sisi ni wageni kutoka marekani na tumekuja hapa kusoma Kiswahili na utamaduni wa Afrika Mashariki.

Shabiki: Karibuni sana nchini mwetu. Mimi ninafahamika kama Sudi. Je, ninaweza kuwafahamu?

Joseph: Bila shaka. Jina langu ni Joseph na mwenzangu hapa anaitwa Shamila. Kama nilivyokueleza hapo awali sisi ni wanafunzi humu nchini.

Ningependa kujua kwa nini mashabiki wameketi pande mbili tofauti na wana sare za rangi tofauti?

Shabiki: Asante sana kwa swali lako. Kwanza kabisa ningependa kukueleza kwamba timu hizi mbili zinawakilisha mataifa ya Kenya na Tanzania. Kwa hivyo, hii ni mechi kati ya mafahali wakubwa kutoka zamani. Kwa sababu hii, mashabiki wameketi pande tofauti ili kushangilia mataifa yao na pia kuzuia vurugu baina ya mashabiki wakati timu moja itakapoipiku nyingine mwishoni mwa mechi.

Joseph: Tunakushukuru sana kwa maelezo hayo mema.

Shabiki: Karibu. Ni vema kufahamu kuwa timu hizi mbili zina changamoto za kibinafsi.

Joseph: Je, timu hizi zina changamoto zipi?

Shabiki: Tukianza na timu ya Taifa ya Harambee Stars kutoka nchini Kenya, ingawa timu hii ina wachezaji wenye tajriba ya juu zaidi, wao hulipwa mishahara midogo sana. Kwa hivyo huwabidi wachezaji wenye talanta kuhamia mataifa ya ulaya ili kupata mishahara mikubwa. Wengine hubadilisha hata uraia wao inapobidi. Changamoto hizi pia huikumba timu ya Yanga.

Joseph: Je, wizara ya michezo haijaibua njia mwafaka za kuhakikisha kuwa wachezaji wanalipwa mishahara itakayowawezesha kujikimu maishani?

Shabiki: Mbinu tofauti zinaweza kubuniwa ila wizara hii imetawaliwa na ufisadi. Hii ndiyo sababu kuu wachezaji hawalipwi mishahara inayofaa.

Joseph: Kutokana na maelezo yako, sasa ninaelewa kwa nini wachezaji hao hawana budi ila kuhamia nchi za nje.

Shabiki: Bila shaka.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa maelezo hayo mema.

Shabiki: Karibuni na kwaheri.

1. Je, hii ni mara ya ngapi Joseph na Shamila kuhudhuria mechi hii?
2. Je, ni kwa nini mashabiki wameketi pande tofauti?
3. Eleza ni changamoto gani ambazo zinazikumba timu hizi mbili.
4. Kwa nini wachezaji wa timu ya Harambee Stars na Yanga huhamia nchi za ulaya?
5. Ni mbinu zipi zinaweza kutumika ili kupambana na ufisadi uliomo kwenye wizara za michezo katika nchi za Afrika Mashariki?
6. Je, kuna timu yoyote ya mchezo ambayo unapenda? Toa maelezo mafupi kuhusu timu hii na kwa nini unaipenda.
7. Ni changamoto zipi ambazo timu za michezo nchini mwako hukumbana nazo?
8. Michezo ina umuhimu gani katika jamii yako?



Zoezi T

Shamila and Joseph meet a student from Kenya at the music festival and discuss music. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Ndugu yangu vipi?

John: Salama sana. Mambo?

Shamila: Sina neno. Ninaona umevaa tisheti ambayo ina bendera ya rangi za nchi ya Kenya. Je, unatoka nchi ya Kenya?

John: Ndiyo. Ninatoka nchi ya Kenya. Wewe na mwenzako mnatoka nchi gani?

Shamila: Sisi ni wamarekani. Jina langu ni Shamila na mwenzangu anaitwa Joseph. Sisi ni wanafunzi. Tamasha la mwaka huu limekuwa nzuri sana. Je, hii ni mara yako ya kwanza kuhudhuria tamasha hili?

John: Hii si mara yangu ya kwanza kuhudhuria tamasha hili. Nimekuwa nikilihudhuria tamasha hili kwa zaidi ya miaka minne sasa. Ninatoka nchi ya Kenya na ni bei ghali kusafiri kutoka huko. Imenigharimu zaidi ya shilingi elfu tano. Nilisafiri kwa basi.

Shamila: Pole kwa safari yako. Ninajua tamasha hili ni ghali sana. Ninajua kusafiri kwa ndege pia ni bei ghali zaidi. Unahitaji kutumia zaidi ya shilingi elfu kumi na tano.

John: Ni kweli kabisa. Mimi kwa kawaida husafiri kwa basi ninaposafiri ndani ya Afrika Mashariki.

Shamila: Tamasha hili lina wanamuziki wengi maarufu. Nimependa sana Bendi ya Sauti Sol. Je, wao wanatoka nchi ya Kenya?

John: Ndiyo, wanamuziki hawa wanatoka nchi ya Kenya na bendi yao ina wanamuziki wanne. Wao huimba muziki wa aina ya Afro-pop. Wamepata tuzo nyingi sana za kimataifa.

Shamila: Ninafahamu kwamba wameshikiri katika tamasha za muziki Uropa na pia Marekani. Ninafikiri miaka mitatu iliyopita walikuja mjini Chicago lakini tiketi zilikuwa ghali sana sikuweza kuhudhuria tamasha hilo.

John: Hapa kiingilio cha tamasha si ghali sana. Ninajua Sauti Sol watakuwa katika tamasha la wiki ya utamaduni katika Chuo Kikuu cha Kenyatta mwezi ujao. Iwapo mtasafiri Kenya ningependa mhudhurie tamasha hilo.

Shamila: Kuna uwezekano tutakuwa Kenya mwezi wa Juni. Tungependa kuhudhuria tamasha hili pamoja na kutembelea vivutio vingine vya watalii nchini humo.

John: Itakuwa furaha yangu kukutana na nyinyi tena. Nitawapa nambari yangu. Nambari yangu ya simu ya Kenya na pia kwenye Whatsapp ni +254711365834.

Shamila: Asante. Tumeihifadhi kwenye simu zetu. Tutawasiliana inshallah.

John: Vyema sana. Kwaherini kwa sasa.

1. John hutumia usafiri gani anaposafiri ndani ya nchi za Afrika Mashariki?
2. Je, hii ni mara ya kwanza ya John kuhudhuria tamasha hili?
3. Bendi ya Sauti Sol huimba aina gani ya muziki?
4. Kwa nini Shamila hakuhudhuria tamasha la bendi ya Sauti Sol mjini Chicago?
5. Shamila na Joseph walitarajia kuwa Kenya mwezi gani?
6. Je, Shamila na Joseph wanapanga kufanya nini watakapokuwa nchini Kenya?
7. Je, umewahi kuhudhuria tamasha lolote la muziki? Toa maelezo mafupi.



Zoezi U

Read the following article on Sauti za Busara adapted from the online newspaper *Mwananchi* (mwananchi.co.tz) and answer the questions that follow.



Sauti za Busara 2022

Tangu mwaka wa 2004 ambao Tamasha la Sauti za Busara lilianzishwa, wanamuziki mashuhuri na wenye vipaji kutoka sehemu tofauti barani Afrika wamekuwa wakiwatumbuiza mashabiki. Kwa kawaida, Sauti za Busara huwa inafanyika wiki ya pili ya mwezi wa Februari na mashabiki hufika mjini Stone Town kushiriki kwenye sherehe hii maarufu. Mada inayoangaziwa katika Tamasha la mwaka huu ni “Paza Sauti: Uwezeshaji wa Sauti za Wanawake kusikika”. Kama kawaida, tamasha litafanyika katika mji wa Stone Town hapa Zanzibar lakini kutokana na idadi kubwa ya wageni wanaotajariwa kuhudhuria, tamasha limeandaliwa katika jumba la Ngome Kongwe kuanzia mwezi wa Februari 11 hadi 13. Umaarufu wa Sauti za Busara unaendelea kuongezeka kwa hivyo wasanii wengi wenye vipawa tofauti tofauti na vikundi vya bendi kutoka sehemu tofauti barani Afrika wanatarajiwa kujibwaga kwa jukwaa kuonyesha umahiri wao na kuwatumbuiza mashabiki. Baadhi ya wanamuziki hao ni:

Sampa the Great ni mmojawapo wa wanamuziki wa Afrika na ni mzaliwa wa nchi ya Zambia lakini huwa anaishi nchini Australia. Yeye hucheza muziki wa Hip Hop. Sampa amekuwa akihudhuria na kuwasilisha muziki wake kwenye Sauti za Busara kwa miaka mitano mfululizo. Muziki wake una muungano wa ushairi, Rap, Blues na hata Jazz kwa hivyo huwasisimua mashabiki vijana sana. Amepata sifa mbalimbali duniani na amewasilisha kwenye matamasha mengine makubwa na kuwavutia mashabiki kutokana na aina tofauti ya burudani ya nguvu, miondoko na sauti yake nzuri.

Vitali Maembe ni mwanamuziki wa Tanzania anayeheshimika nchini kote. Pia ana kipawa cha kupiga gitaa na kutunga nyimbo ambazo zinaibua mijadala yenye afya inayotarajiwa kuwafanya watu kutafuta suluhu kwa matatizo yanayowakabili kila siku. Muziki wake ni muungano wa ladha za bara na pwani na mashairi chokozi ya kuwataka viongozi wala rushwa kubadilisha mienendo yao. Nyimbo zake zinawalenga viongozi ambao wanawaahidi raia kisha wanakosa kutimiza ahadi zao.

Msaki ni mwimbaji kutoka Afrika Kusini ambaye ni mtunzi na mwenye kipawa cha kulisimua na kuwasafirisha mashabiki kwenye dunia ya matumaini na matamainio.

Wamwiduka Band ni kundi la wanamuziki wanne walioungana mwaka wa 2012 na sasa wamepata umaarufu ukanda mzima wa Afrika Mashariki. Wanaimba na kufanya maonyesho yanayosisimua umati katika vituo vya mabasi, masokoni na kwenye mabaa. Wao hujulikana kwa kucheza muziki wa asili kutoka Mbeya nchini Tanzania. Kundi hilo linajumuisha wanamuziki Brown Isaya ambaye anaongoza bendi kama mwimbaji mkuu na Adriano Wilson anayeshughulika na kupiga gitaa na chombo cha muziki cha banjo. Pia kuna Zakaria Michael ambaye anaimba kutokana na sauti yake nyororo, na ana kipawa cha kupiga ngoma kwa njia ya ustadi pamoja na Peter Mashaka anayepiga besi na babatoni.

Ben Pol ni mwanamuziki mashuhuri kutoka Tanzania, mwimbaji wa R & B mwenye sauti ya ubora wa juu na mtunzi wa nyimbo kadha wa kadha. Pia ana kipaji kinachokua kwa kasi katika anga za muziki za Afrika na kufikia sasa amepata tuzo mbalimbali na kutambulika kama mwimbaji hodari. Baadhi ya nyimbo ambazo amebuni na zinazoendelea kuvuma zaidi hasa katika Afrika Mashariki ni: 'Nikikupata', 'Number One Fan', 'Samboira', 'Maneno', 'Moyo Mashine', 'Pete', 'Jikubali', 'Wapo', 'Kidani' na 'Sikukuu'.

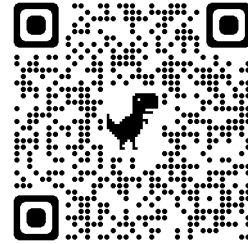
Seif Mwinyijuma Haji ni mwanamuziki kutoka Dar es Salaam ambaye ana umaarufu mkubwa kwa kuwa mmoja wa wanzilishi wa muziki wa Singeli ambao ni fahari ya taifa. Ameshinda tuzo nyingi na anaendelea kutawala jukwaa la dansi barani Afrika.

1. Je, kauli mbiu ya Tamasha la Sauti za Busara “Uwezesaji wa Sauti za Wanawake kusikika” ina maana gani?
2. Tamasha la Sauti za Busara litafanyika lini?
3. Kutakuwa na makundi mangapi ya wanamuziki ambayo yatawakilishwa kwenye tamasha hili?
4. Sampa the Great ni mzaliwa wa nchi gani?
5. Lengo kubwa katika shughuli za muziki za Vitali Maembe ni lipi?
6. Mwanamuziki Msaki ana kipawa kipi?
7. Wasanii wa Afrika Mashariki wanatofautiana au kufanana vipi na wasanii wa nchi yako?
8. Kuna vivutio gani vingine katika Tamasha la Sauti za Busara ya 2022?
9. Tamasha la kwanza la Sauti za Busara lilifanyika mwaka gani?
10. Je, Bendi ya Mwaiduka wanaimba miziki yao katika maeneo gani?



Zoezi V

Shamila and Joseph are getting ready for the concert the next day and are researching East African musicians. Watch the video from BBC News Swahili about Tanzanian musician Dipper Rato and answer the questions that follow.



tinyurl.com/bdf98zsy

1. Msanii Dipper Rato alisema mambo gani matatu kuhusu muziki wa Reggae?
2. Ni nini kilimfanya msanii Dipper Rato kuuchagua muziki wa Reggae?
3. Dipper Rato alisema ni aina gani ya muziki ambayo hupewa kipao mbele katika Afrika Mashariki?
4. Msanii huyu alikulia kwenye mazingira gani?
5. Msanii huyu alioanisha vipi shughuli zake kama balozi wa utalii na muziki?
6. Dipper Rato alitaja vivutio gani vya utalii nchini Tanzania?
7. Dipper Rato alitumia mitandao gani ya kijamii na kwa njia gani?



Zoezi W

Using the playlist linked to the right or a similar list of East African popular music, find a song that interests you and research the song and the artist(s). Write a one- to two-page summary that provides some biographical detail about the artist(s) and the musical genre to which they belong. Compare the artist(s) to similar artists from your own culture. Be prepared to share your research with the class and to play the specific song so that your classmates get a sense of the artist(s). Remember that written assignments and oral presentations take different forms, so do not plan to just read your essay in front of the class.



tinyurl.com/v2t395t4

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

bingwa	champion
bora	suitable or better
chache; haba	few
changamfu	excitement; happiness
chosha	boring
fujo; vurugu	chaotic
geni	new
ghali	expensive
harufu	smell
hodari	skilled; expert
ingi	a lot; many
kali	strong
katili	mean
kulia	right
kushoto	left
laini	soft
maarufu	famous
makini	careful
muhimu	important
mwororo	smooth
-pya	new
rahisi	cheap
safi	cool
tele	plenty
tulivu	calm
-zee	old

Nouns

ada	fee
Afrika Kaskazini	North Africa
Afrika Kusini	South Africa; Southern Africa
Afrika Magharibi	West Africa
Afrika Mashariki	East Africa
Afrika ya Kati	Central Africa
ala	instrument
bendi	band
burudani	entertainment
dansi	dance
dira	compass
Futiboli ya Marekani	American football
jamii	community
jukwaa	stage
Kaskazini	North
Kaskazini Magharibi	Northwest
Kaskazini Mashariki	Northeast
kati; katikati	middle; center
kelele	noise

kiingilio	entrance fee
kilele	climax
kipawa	talent
kisiwa	island
kivuko	crossing
kundi	group
Kusini	south
Kusini Magharibi	Southwest
Kusini Mashariki	Southeast
lami	tarmac road
mada	theme
Magharibi	West
Magharibi ya Kati	Midwest
Majimbo ya Kusini	Southern states
mapato	revenue; income
Mashariki	East
Mashariki ya Kati	Middle East
mashuhuri	famous
mbao	wood
mchezaji	dancer; player
mchezo wa vikapu	basketball
mdundo	beat
michezo	games
miereka	wrestling
mila; desturi-	customs; manners; traditions
mipango; mikakati	plans
mpira	ball
mpira wa kandanda	soccer
mshairi; malenga	poet
msondo	a large long drum
mtalaam	specialist
mtunzi	composer
muziki	music
mwanzo	beginning; start
mwimbaji	singer
ndondi	boxing
ngoma	drum
njia; barabara	road; street
pwani	coast
pwani ya magharibi	west coast
pwani ya mashariki	east coast
raga	rugby
riadha	athletics
sehemu	part or side
shairi	poem
sherehe	celebration
shughuli	activities
starehe	enjoyment; relaxation
taarab	Swahili music genre
tamasha	concert
tamati	end

tiketi ticket
umati crowd
ushairi poetry
utaalam expertise
uwanja wa michezo stadium
wimbo song

Prepositions

chini ya under, beneath, below
juu ya above, on top of, over
katiba ya before
kando ya alongside
karibu near
karibu na near; close
kati ya in between
katika; ndani ya; kwenye- in; inside
katikati center; in between; in the middle
kisha then; and then
mbali far
mbali na far from; far
mbele ya in front of, ahead
mpaka; hadi- until
nje ya outside of
nyuma ya behind
tangu from
toka since

Verbs

-ambatana to go together
-anguka to fall down
-anzia to begin from
-cheza to play; to dance
-fuata to follow
-fumukana to disperse
-funga to close
-fungua to open
-geuka to turn
-gombana to quarrel
-imba to sing
-ingia to enter
-ingiliana to enjoin; to intermingle
-isha; -maliza to end
-julikana to be known
-kariri to recite
-kera to bother
-kulewa to get drunk
-nengua to gyrate
-ondoka to leave
-pigana to fight
-pinda to turn

-potea to get lost
-poteza to lose
-ruka to jump
-sanyika to gather
-shangilia to cheer
-shiriki to participate
-starehesha to make someone have fun/feel comfortable
-sukuma to push
-tembea to walk
-tembelea to visit
-tumbuiza to entertain
-tumbuizwa to be entertained
-tunga to compose
-viringisha to roll something; to shake your body when dancing
-vuka to cross
-vuta to pull
-vuta (sigara) to smoke (a cigarette)
-wasili to arrive
-zingatia to bear in mind; to consider
-zunguka to go around

Key Phrases

Ada ya kiingilio ilikuwa pesa ngapi? How much was the entrance fee?
bei ghali expensive
bei rahisi; nafuu cheap
kukata na shoka to show the intensity of something
moja kwa moja straight
Muda gani? How long?
Ni umbali gani kutoka hapa kwenda huko? How far is it from here to there?
Ni wasanii gani ambao watawatumbuiza watu kwenye tamasha? Which artists will perform at the concert?
Nimepotea njia unaweza kunisaidia? I have directions, can you assist me?
Ningependa... I would like...
Tamasha lilichosha sana. The concert was boring.
Tamasha lilifana sana. The concert was enjoyable/successful.
Ulifika kwenye tamasha saa ngapi? What time did you arrive at the concert?
Ulifurahia nini kwenye tamasha? What did you enjoy at the concert?
umewahi...? have you ever...?
Unaishi sehemu gani ya mji? In which part of the city do you live?
Unatoka sehemu gani ya jimbo? Which part of the state do you come from?
Unaweza kunieleza jinsi ya kufika huko? Can you explain to me how to get there?

7.3 Safari katika vivutio vya utalii



Zoezi A

Shamila and Joseph are reaching the end of their year abroad and are hoping to do some traveling during the time that they have left. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



mlima



ufukwe



mji



bahari



jangwa



makavazi



mbuga za wanyama



soko la nje

Shamila: Vipi Joseph? Uko salama?

Joseph: Salama kabisa. Ninatumai unafurahia kipindi hiki ambacho chuo kikuu kimefungwa. Angalau unapata nafasi ya kupumzika.

Shamila: Ninafurahia sana kwa sababu ninataka kupumzika na pia ningependa kutalii sehemu chache humu nchini Tanzania kabla ya kumaliza masomo yangu ya nje ya nchi.

Joseph: Hiyo ni mipango mizuri. Kuna aina mbali mbali ya vivutio nchini humu ambavyo ninafikiri utavipenda. Mimi pia ningependa kuzuru nchi ya Tanzania kidogo kabla ya kurudi Marekani.

Shamila: Je, una pendekezo lolote? Nina likizo ya wiki mbili tu. Ningependa kwenda kwa kivutio cha kwanza wiki ya kwanza na cha pili kwenye wiki ya pili.

Joseph: Kuna vivutio mbalimbali nchini humu. Inategemea shughuli ambazo ungependa kufanya katika vivutio hivi. Kwa mfano unaweza kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro, kutembelea makavazi mbali mbali ya kihistoria, kutembelea miji ambayo ni maarufu kwa watalii, kwenda ufukweni au katika mbuga za wanyama.

Shamila: Kweli ninaona kuna vivutio vingi sana nchini humu. Ningependa kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro. Kuna kundi la wanafunzi wengine darasani ambao wanapanga kuukwea mlima Kilimanjaro kwa siku sita.

Joseph: Bibi Fatuma aliniambia kuwa sisi vijana tutafurahia sana shughuli hiyo. Yeye alipenda sana kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro miaka mingi iliyopita alipokuwa mchanga. Je ungependa kufanya nini wiki ya pili?

Shamila: Baada ya shughuli ngumu ya kukwea mlima, ningependa kwenda ufukweni katika kisiwa cha Zanzibar kustarehe.

Joseph: Bila shaka utafurahia kwenda kwenye Kisiwa cha Zanzibar. Katika kisiwa cha Unguja pia kuna vivutio vingine vingi kwa mfano ufukwe wa Paje, Kuza Cave, Jozani National Park, na Prison Island.

Shamila: Kwa kweli kuna vivutio vingi vya kupendeza nchini humu. Nikipata nafasi ningependa kuukwea Mlima Kilimanjaro na kutembelea ufukwe wa Paje. Pia tunaweza kuangalia vivutio ambavyo ni vya bei nafuu ambavyo vinapendwa na watalii wengi. Kwa hivyo tutahitaji kufanya utafiti zaidi kwenye mtandao kuhusu vivutio hivi kabla ya kupanga safari yetu.

Based on the above conversation, decide whether the statements below are kweli (*true*) or si kweli (*false*). If the statement is false, rewrite it to make it true.

1. Shamila wamefunga chuo kwa muda wa wiki nne.
2. Shamila pamoja na wanafunzi wenzake hawangependa kukwea mlima Kenya kipindi hiki cha likizo.
3. Bibi Fatuma alimwambia Joseph kuwa hakupenda kukwea mlima alipokuwa mchanga.
4. Shamila na wenzake watembelea kisiwa cha Unguja wiki ya tatu ya likizo.
5. Shamila anapendekeza wasome zaidi kuhusu vivutio katika kisiwa cha Unguja.



Zoezi B

Poll three of four classmates to find out their preferences for places to visit during a study abroad trip to East Africa. Report the preferences of two of your classmates and answer any follow-up questions that your classmates might have.



Zoezi C

Shamila meets with her classmate to catch up after the semester. During their meeting they discuss the hike to Mt. Kilimanjaro that they are planning with a group of classmates. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Funke: Shamila, habari za jioni?

Shamila: Salama sana Funke. Habari za likizo?

Funke: Nzuri sana. Ninafurahia sana likizo hii.

Shamila: Ninatazamia sana safari yetu ya kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro. Huu ni mlima mrefu zaidi katika bara la Afrika. Je, unajua kimo cha mlima huu?

Funke: Nilikuwa nimeangalia kwenye tovuti. Mlima huo una kimo cha mita elfu tano, mia nane na tisini na tano.

Shamila: Ningependa kukwea mlima hadi nifike kwenye kilele chake. Nimeona kwenye tovuti kuwa kuna njia saba za kuweza kuukwea mlima huu. Kuna njia ya Lemosho, Machame, Rongai, Umbwe, Shira, North Circuit, na Marangu. Unaweza kutumia kati ya siku tano na tisa kuukwea milima huo. Ninafikiri njia zote zinaweza kutufikisha kwenye kilele. Njia hizi zina bei tofauti. Ninaona kukwea kwa siku saba ni dola elfu moja mia nane na sitini.

Funke: Je, bei hiyo ni ya kila mtalii? Je, tukisafiri kama kundi bei itakuwa ipi?

Shamila: Sina uhakika. Ninafikiri tunaweza kupiga simu ili tuzungumze na wahudumu wa kampuni ya *Kilimanjaro on Foot*.

Funke: Ni sawa tunaweza kuwapigia simu baadaye. Ninafikiri tunaweza kuondoka kwenda mjini Moshi siku ya Jumatatu na kurejea Dar es Salaam siku ya Jumapili.

Shamila: Ninakubaliana na pendekezo hilo. Nitazungumza na Adila, Juma, Funke na Hani ili tuikamilishe mipango yetu. Tutahitaji kukubaliana wakati wa kuondoka kituo cha basi. Tutatumia gari la binafsi kuelekea huko.

1. Shamila na Funke wanapanga kuanza safari yao siku gani?
2. Kimo cha mlima Kilimanjaro ni mita ngapi?
3. Gharama ya kuukwea mlima Kilimanjaro ni ipi?
4. Kuna njia ngapi za kwenda kwenye kilele cha mlima Kilimanjaro?
5. Shamila na Joseph watasafiri pamoja na nani wakienda kuukwea Mlima Kilimanjaro?



Zoezi D

During a trip to national parks in East Africa, you and a group of classmates plan to make a few side trips as well. Browse the web and take notes about smaller attractions to visit during your trip.



Zoezi E

Discuss the smaller attractions that you found in the previous activity with a partner to see which of you found the best options. Be prepared to persuade your partner that your choices are the best, but you will need to select one attraction that you can agree upon.



Zoezi F

Share with your class the attraction that you and your partner have decided to visit. Indicate why you chose that particular attraction. Be prepared to answer your classmates' questions.



Zoezi G

Review the details of the itinerary for a three-day tour of Mount Kilimanjaro and answer the questions that follow.

Siku ya kwanza

Wageni watatembea kwa muda wa saa sita. Baada ya kiamshakinywa utaondoka katika msitu wa mvua and kuingia katika sehemu ya mimea. Utavuka vijito vingi na utatembea kwenye miamba kuelekea katika tambarare ya Shira ambayo inakuelekeza kwenye kambi ya Shira ambayo itakuwa kimo cha mita elfu tatu na mia nane na arobaini. Hapa, kuna maandhari mazuri ya ufukwe wa magharibi. Wahudumu wa kampuni huenda mapema kabla ya wageni na huandaa vinywaji na kuchemsha maji ya kuoga. Baada ya kuwasili katika kambi ya Machame, wageni huoga, hupumzika na hula vyakula vya jioni. Wageni wanahitaji kuwa tayari kustahimili baridi kali kwa sababu hali ya joto huwa chini ya nyuzi sufuri. Kwa kawaida, wageni hupewa majiko ya kuwapasha joto katika hema au wakati mwingine moto huwashwa nje ili wasipate baridi.



Siku ya pili

Wageni watembea kwa muda wa saa saba. Baada ya kiamshakinywa utaondoka mazingira ya Moorland na kuingia katika jangwa lenye mazingira ya mawe. Baada ya kutembea kwa saa matano kuelekea sehemu ya mashariki utakutana na mnara wa Lava ambao uko katika kimo cha mita elfu nne mia sita na thelathini. Wageni wataandaliwa chakula cha mchana. Wageni wanaweza kupanda mnara wa Lava iwapo hali ya hewa ni nzuri. Kwa wakati huu ni kawaida wageni kuanza kuhisi athari za miinuko ya juu zaidi mwilini kwa mfano maumivu ya kichwa, upungufu wa pumzi, kupata kichefuchefu na wakati mwingine kutapika.



Baada ya chakula cha mchana utashuka kutoka kwa mnara wa Lava ambao uko kimo cha mita elfu nne, mia sita na thelathini kuelekea kwenye kambi ya Barranco ambayo iko kimo cha mita elfu tatu mia tisa na hamsini. Kushuka kimo cha mita elfu sita mia nane kunawapa wageni nafasi ya kuipumzisha miili yao na pia kuiruhusu miili yao kuwa imara kwa viwango vya juu vya hewa. Kushuka au kuteremka kwenda kambini huchukua mwendo wa saa mbili. Maji ya kunywa na chakula cha jioni kitaandaliwa kwa wageni wote wakati huu. Wageni watakula chakula cha jioni wakistarehe na kuangalia jinsi jua linavyotua.

Siku ya tatu

Karibu kwa siku kuu na ya mwisho ya kuukwea mlima Kilimanjaro. Leo tutakwea kimo cha mita elfu moja. Mjipe moyo na muwe na ujasiri ili tuweze kuushinda ukuta wa Barranco. Baada ya kiamshakinywa tutaanza kuukwea mlima. Utakapopanda hadi kilele cha Barranco utaweza kuona Heim Glacier ambayo inaonekana juu ya mawingu. Njia hii inazunguka juu na chini ya chimbuko la Karanga.

1. Wageni watatembea umbali wa kilomita ngapi siku ya kwanza?
2. Wageni watakapoelekea kwenye kambi ya Machame watapitia katika mandhari gani?
3. Hali joto huwa kiwango gani unapoelekea kilele cha mlima?
4. Safari ya siku ya pili huwa na changamoto gani?
5. Safari ya siku ya tatu itachukua muda wa siku ngapi?
6. Kwa nini wageni wengi huwa na uoga kusafiri siku ya tatu?



Zoezi H

In pairs, review the website of Kilimanjaro on Foot (kilimanjaroonfoot.com) or any other tourist company and come up with at least six questions that you would like to have answered as you plan your itinerary.



Zoezi I

Shamila calls the Kilimanjaro on Foot tour company to ask a few questions about the Mount Kilimanjaro Trek. Listen to her conversation and answer the questions that follow.

1. Shamila na wenzake wataanzia safari yao wapi?
2. Siku ya kwanza wageni watafanya nini kabla ya kuanza kuukwea mlima wa Kilimanjaro?
3. Wageni wakifika katika kambi ya Machame wataweza kulala wapi?
4. Wageni watafika kambi ya Machame saa ngapi?
5. Ni athari gani ambazo watalii wanaweza kukumbana nazo wanapoukwea mlima wa Kilimanjaro?
6. Mhudumu atawasaidia wageni vipi kujizuia na baridi usiku?
7. Wageni watafanya nini baada ya kufika katika kambi ya Machame kabla ya kula chakula cha jioni?
8. Wageni watakapoukwea mlima watapumzika baada ya saa ngapi?
9. Je, kuna sehemu gani za kulala kwa wapiga kambi?
10. Kwa nini kambi imezungukwa na ua wenye umeme?



Zoezi J

Decide with a partner what place in East Africa you would like to visit and come up with a list of 10 questions that you might want to ask a tour company.



Zoezi K

Now switch partners and role-play where you are both the tourist and the tour company. Make sure to mention the place you are planning to visit and the proposed time at the beginning of the conversation.



Zoezi L

During your hike to Mount Kenya, you start to feel unwell. The tour staff is available to provide medical support, but you decide to call your personal doctor to inform him/her how you are feeling and to provide information about the treatment that you have received and the precautions you are taking. Role-play the scenario.



Zoezi M

During your hike you write daily journal entries to document your experiences. Write a detailed journal entry of your activities for one day and be prepared to present the same to the class.



Zoezi N

Before Shamila and Joseph travel to Kenya they check various websites and agree on a few things that they would like to do. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

- Shamila:** Nimefurahi sana tutaweza kusafiri kwenda nchini Kenya. Nimekuwa nikitazamia safari hii sana kwa muda mrefu. Na wewe je?
- Joseph:** Mimi pia nina matarajio makubwa sana. Singependa kurudi Marekani kabla ya kupata nafasi ya kwenda kwenye *Safari*. Je, ungependa kuwa kwenye safari hiyo kwa muda gani?
- Shamila:** Itategemea hela ambazo tunazo. Mimi nilikuwa nimeweka akiba ya dola elfu moja na mia tano. Je wewe una hela ngapi?
- Joseph:** Mimi nimeweka hifadhi ya dola elfu mbili na mia tano. Kwa hivyo jumla tuna dola elfu nne na mia tano. Funke alisema ana dola elfu moja na mia tano na pia angependa kujiunga nasi. Kwa hivyo jumla tuna dola elfu tano na mia tano.
- Shamila:** Hicho ni kiasi kizuri cha hela. Ninaangalia tovuti ya Bonfire ambayo ni Kampuni maarufu kwa watalii wanaotaka kwenda Mbuga la wanyama la Maasai Mara. Tunaweza kuangalia bei zao ili tuchague safari moja kulingana na hela ambazo tunazo.
- Joseph:** Ninakubaliana na wewe. Ninaona kuna safari ya siku kumi na moja kwa gharama ya dola elfu nne mia tatu na tisini.
- Shamila:** Pia ninaona kuna safari nyingine ya siku kumi na mbili ambayo iko Kenya na Tanzania. Safari hii ina gharimu dola elfu tano mia tano na kumi na nane. Sijui kuna tofauti gani kati ya safari hizi mbili.
- Joseph:** Ninaona kwamba, safari ya pili ni ya kuzuru nchi ya Tanzania. Na pia muda utakaotumika kwa safari hii unaongezeka kwa siku moja kwa sababu ni mwendo mrefu. Mbali na hayo ninaona vivutio na shughuli za kila siku kama vile kwenda kwenye mbuga la Maasai Mara kuwaona wanyama wa porini na kupanda mlima Kenya. Kulingana na maelezo kwenye tovuti la Bonfire, kwenye Mlima Kenya kuna wanyama pori kama vile fisi, tembo, mbweha, swala, na mbogo. Wanyama wanaonekana mara chache ni chui na nguruwe pori. Pia kuna ndege zaidi ya aina mia moja na thelathini ambao wako kwenye mlima huu. Kati ya hizi siku kumi na moja tutaweza kutembelea vivutio vingine vilivyo karibu na mbuga la Maasai Mara. Je, ungependa kwenda kwa safari ya Kenya pekee yake au pia ile ya nchi ya Tanzania?
- Shamila:** Kwa sasa ningependa kwenda kwa safari ya Kenya. Nitaenda kwa safari ya Tanzania wakati mwingine. Na wewe je?

Joseph: Mimi pia ninapendelea safari ya Kenya. Ni bei rahisi kidogo na pia kuna shughuli mbalimbali za kuvutia kwa ratiba ya kila siku.

Shamila: Nitampigia Funke simu nimfahamishe kuhusu majadiliano yetu na kupata uamuzi wake kisha tuanze kununua tiketi za safari yetu.

1. Shamila, Joseph, na Funke wamehifadhi pesa ngapi ambazo wangependa kutumia kwa safari hii?
2. Shamila na wenzake wangependa kwenda kwenye safari kwa kutumia kampuni gani ya utalii?
3. Shamila na Joseph wangependa kwenda kwa safari ambayo itagharimu hela ngapi?
4. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila wameichagua safari ya kwenda Kenya?
5. Je, kuna tofauti gani kati ya safari ya Kenya na ile ya Tanzania?
6. Mlima Kenya una ndege aina ngapi?
7. Iwapo ungekuwa na nafasi ya kujiunga na kundi la Joseph na Shamila, ungechagua kwenda kwenye safari gani na kwa nini?



Zoezi O

Shamila and Joseph call John, the young Kenyan man they met at the music festival, in order to get his advice on good places they can visit in Kenya. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.



chui



ndovu



twiga



kiboko



mbweha



simba



nyumbu



punda milia



mamba



swala



kifaru



duma

- Joseph:** Vipi kaka John? Huyu ni Joseph kutoka Tanzania. Niko pamoja na Shamila. Tulikutana hapa Dar es Salaam mwezi uliopita katika Tamasha la Sauti za Busara.
- John:** Salama sana. Mambo? Habari za siku nyingi? Nimefurahi sana kusikia kutoka kwenu.
- Joseph:** Sisi pia. Tungependa kukueleza kuwa tunapanga safari ya kwenda Kenya wiki ijayo?
- John:** Karibu sana ninatazamia sana kuwaona.
- Joseph:** Asante. Tunatafuta vivutio ambavyo tunaweza kuvitembelea kwa wiki mbili ambazo tutakuwa nchini Kenya.
- John:** Ninafikiri mtapenda kwenda kwenye mbuga la wanyama la Maasai Mara ambapo mtaweza kuona uhamiaji wa nyumbu kutoka hifadhi ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara iliyoko upande wa Kenya na kuingia katika Mbuga la Taifa la Serengeti ambalo lipo nchi ya Tanzania.
- Joseph:** Safi kabisa. Shamila ana swali kwako. Kwa hivyo nitampa simu ili uzumgumze naye.
- Shamila:** John, huyu ni Shamila. Nimefurahi sana kuwa tutaweza kukutana Kenya panapo majaliwa.
- John:** Mimi pia nimefurahi sana.
- Shamila:** Je, ni kweli kuwa Maasai Mara ndilo hifadhi kubwa la wanyama pori nchini Kenya?
- John:** Katika Afrika Mashariki hifadhi ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara ni maarufu sio tu kwa ukubwa bali kwa idadi ya wanyama wa kila aina wanaopatikana humo. Niliona kwenye mtandao kuwa “Maasai Mara ni mojawapo ya maeneo ya uhifadhi wa wanyama pori na vichaka muhimu zaidi barani Afrika na ni maarufu ulimwenguni kwa idadi yake bora ya simba, chui, duma na tembo. Pia ina uhamiaji mkubwa wa nyumbu ambao ni mojawapo ya miujiza asili ya Afrika na miujiza kumi bora duniani.” Kulingana na maelezo haya ninaona Maasai Mara ni sehemu nzuri ya kutembelea.
- Shamila:** Huwa ninavutiwa na pembe za nyumbu na kifarua na jinsi wanavyotembea pamoja kwa wingi. Je, kuna vivutio gani vingine nchini Kenya bali na Maasai Mara?
- John:** Nchini Kenya kuna vivutio vingi vya watalii kama vile Mlima Kenya, Bahari Hindi, Chemichemi ya maji moto ya Olkaria, Ziwa Bogoria, Ziwa Elementaita na vinginevyo.
- Shamila:** Kijiografia ninafahamu Mlima Kenya na Bahari Hindi lakini sijui Chemichemi ya Olkaria iko sehemu gani nchini Kenya?
- John:** Chemichemi ya Olkaria iko kwenye Mbuga la wanyama la Hells Gate ambalo lipo kusini mwa Ziwa Naivasha, kaskazini magharibi mwa jiji la Nairobi. Ni takribani kilomita mia moja na ishirini kutoka jiji la Nairobi. Mbuga hili linafahamika sana kutokana na mandhari yake na idadi kubwa ya ndege.

Shamila: Basi hapo ndipo mahali tunapaswa kwenda kwa kuwa ninapenda sana kukwea milima, kuona ndege, wanyama tofauti tofauti na kuongelea kwenye bahari. Pia ningependa kwenda kuona vivutio vilivyoko kwenye Bonde la Ufa kama ulivyosema.

John: Ninafikiri mkitembelea Kenya mtaweza kutimiza malengo yenu. Je, mnapanga kuwasili Kenya lini?

Shamila: Tutawasili Kenya tarehe moja, siku ya Jumatano. Tutasafiri kwa ndege ya Kenya Airways.

John: Sawa. Ninawatakia safari njema. Tutaongea mkifika.

1. Shamila, Joseph, na John walikutana wapi mara ya kwanza?
2. Shamila na Joseph watasafiri lini kwenda Kenya?
3. John alipendekeza Shamila na Joseph waende katika mbuga gani?
4. Ni wanyama wa aina gani wanaopatikana katika hifadhi ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara?
5. Nyumbu huvuka kutoka sehemu gani hadi gani?
6. Kuna vivutio gani vingine nchini Kenya ambavyo Shamila na Joseph wataweza kuvitembelea?
7. Shamila na Joseph watawasili Kenya siku gani?
8. Shamila na Joseph watakaa Kenya kwa muda gani?
9. Chemichemi ya Olkaria iko sehemu gani ya nchi ya Kenya na unafikiri watalii hutumia usafiri gani kutoka Nairobi hadi Naivasha?
10. Shamila na Joseph watatumia usafiri gani kwenda Kenya?



Zoezi P

Poll your classmates to find out what wild animals they have seen, where they saw them, and what they were doing. Make sure to ask follow-up questions as needed. Be prepared to report back to the class on what you find out.



Zoezi Q

You are planning a trip to Kenya. Work with a partner to research tour companies that provide suitable tours. Weigh the relative advantages and disadvantages of the possible tour packages (including cost) and decide which package seems best for your group. Be prepared to share your choice with your classmates and to explain why your choice is the best option.



Zoezi R

Shamila and Joseph are on their flight to Kenya and are discussing their expectations about what they will do. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Nimependezwa na jinsi wahudumu wa ndege ya kampuni ya Kenya Airways wanavyowahudumia wateja wao.

Shamila: Huduma zao ni nzuri na sare zao za kazi zinapendeza mno.

Mhudumu: Mambo vipi?

Shamila: Salama. Je, safari ya kwenda Kenya kwa ndege huchukua muda gani?

Mhudumu: Safari kutoka Tanzania hadi Kenya huchukua muda wa saa moja na dakika arobaini na tano.

Joseph: Kumbe ni safari fupi tu.

Mhudumu: Ndiyo. Tumesalia na dakika thelathini kabla ya kuwasili kwenye Uwanja wa Ndege wa Kimataifa wa Jomo Kenyatta. Ndege itakapotua, utaweza kuona mandhari ya mbuga la wanyama la Nairobi.

Joseph: Kumbe kuna mbuga la wanyama katika jiji la Nairobi?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo. Ilikuwa hifadhi ya kwanza kuanzishwa nchini Kenya. Ilianzishwa mwaka wa 1946 na ina umaarufu mkubwa kwa kuwa iko karibu sana na mji mkubwa, ingawa jambo hili huleta mgogoro kati ya wanyama na wananchi. Wakati mwingine wanyama kama simba, tembo, kifarua na chui hutoka porini na kutembea barabarani au kwenye makazi ya watu. Hali hii huhatarisha maisha ya watu wengi. Kutoka katika jiji la Nairobi ni kilomita saba pekee yake kufika kwenye hifadhi hii. Lakini unaweza kuchukua muda mrefu kutegemea kiwango cha msongamano wa magari kwenye wiki. Kama mngependa kwenda nina washauri muende mapema wakati wa asubuhi ili muepuke msongamano mkubwa wa magari. Muda wa asubuhi huwa bora pia kwa sababu ndio wakati ambao wanyama huwa nje malishoni.

Joseph: Nilisoma kuwa pia kuna reli ya kisasa ya Kenya ya SGR ambayo inapitia kwenye mbuga hili. Je, tunaweza kuitumia?

Mhudumu: Ujenzi wa reli ulipata changamoto kubwa mwanzoni kwa kuwa mashirika ya kijamii yalipinga na kusema kuwa ujenzi huu kwenye mbuga la wanyama utavuruga maisha ya wanyama pori na mazingira. Hamwezi kutumia reli kwenda porini.

Joseph: Je, serikali na mashirika ya mazingira yanafanya nini ili kuboresha mbuga hili.

Mhudumu: Serikali imeweka mikakati ifaayo ili kupunguza athari za tabia nchi ambazo husababisha ukame ili kuzuia vifo na uhamaji wa wanyama pori kutoka kwenye mbuga hili hadi sehemu zingine. Pia serikali ya Kenya inaendelea kushirikiana na serikali ya kaunti na mashirika kama vile Africa Wildlife Foundation, Elephant Crisis Foundation na mengineyo pamoja na watafiti kutoka vyuo vikuu nchini ili kubuni sera mwafaka kwa kutumia teknolojia za kisasa. Kwa mfano, wanatumia droni kurekodi video na picha ambazo zinaweza kutumiwa na watafiti kujua tabia na harakati za wanyama pori. Njia hizi husaidia kupunguza migogoro kati ya wanyama na binadamu.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa maelezo yako mema. Ninaona majengo marefu ya miundo ya kisasa. Kwani tumeshafika Nairobi?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, tumeshafika Nairobi na tutaanza kutua baada ya dakika chache. Karibuni, nchini Kenya. Tumefurahi kuwa wahudumu wenu wa siku ya leo na tunatumaini mtachagua kampuni ya Kenya Airways katika safari zenu za baadaye.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tumefurahia safari yetu na huduma zenu.

1. Shamila na Joseph waliabiri ndege gani?
2. Kwa nini Joseph alipendekwa na huduma za Kenya Airways?
3. Safari ya ndege kutoka Dar es Salaam hadi Nairobi huchukua muda gani?
4. Ndege ya kina Shamila ilitua kwa uwanja gani nchini Kenya?
5. Mbuga la wanyama la Nairobi lina changamoto gani?
6. Ni kilomita ngapi kutoka katikati ya jiji la Nairobi hadi Mbuga la wanyama la Nairobi?
7. Kwa nini mhudumu aliwashauri Joseph na Shamila kwenda mapema kwenye Mbuga la Wanyama la Nairobi?
8. Serikali ya Kenya imeweka mikakati gani ili kuboresha Mbuga la Wanyama la Nairobi?
9. Ni mashirika gani ambayo yanashirikiana kubuni sera mwafaka ambazo zitachangia kupunguza migogoro kati ya wananchi na wanyama?
10. Je, kwa nini ujenzi wa reli ulipingwa?



Zoezi S

How would you describe the relationship of people in your country to wild animals? Are steps taken to preserve the habitats of wild animals or is there a greater focus on protecting residents and their property? Discuss with a partner or the class as a whole.



Zoezi T

Read the **itinerary** of a safari trip to Maasai Mara and Amboseli National Park and answer the questions that follow.

Siku tano za Safari kwenye mbuga la Amboseli na Maasai Mara

Kenya Safari ni mojawapo ya kampuni za kuzuru mabuga ya wanyama pori nchini Kenya. *Kenya Safari* inakupeleka kwenye maeneo bora zaidi nchini Kenya na vile vile katika sehemu zingine za Afrika Mashariki. Tunapanga shughuli kadhaa zitakazowafanya mfurahie matembezi kwenye hifadhi la taifa la Maasai Mara. Hii ni mojawapo ya sehemu tunayoipendekeza kwa watalii wote wanaofika nchini Kenya. Sehemu hii ni makao ya wanyama pori wengi, wakiwemo *Big Five (Watano Wakubwa)*. Baadaye tutaenda kwenye Mbuga la taifa la Amboseli ambapo mtafurahia mandhari mazuri ya mlima Kilimanjaro, ambao ni mlima mrefu zaidi barani Afrika. Mwishowe tutarejea mjini Nairobi na kutamatisha ratiba yetu.

Ratiba ya siku tano katika mbuga la Maasai Mara na Amboseli

Siku ya 1:

Safari ya kutoka Jiji la Nairobi hadi Mbuga la taifa la Amboseli

Safari yetu itaanzia kwenye hoteli yako huko Nairobi baada ya kupata kiamshakinywa. Ili kuhakikisha kila mtu ameelewa ratiba yetu ya siku tano tutawaeleza kwa ufupi kuhusu safari kisha tutaanza safari ya kuelekea Amboseli. Kutoka mji wa Nairobi ni takribani kilomita mia mbili na ishirini kwa gari. Ili wageni wetu wapate nafasi ya kuona mandhari tofauti ya nchi, tutatumia barabara ya kupitia mji wa Namanga ulioko mpaka wa Kenya na Tanzania. Safari hii si fupi kwa hivyo tutawapatia chakula cha mchana baada ya kufika Mbuga la taifa la Amboseli. Tutapitia kwenye tambarare za Savana ambapo tutaweza kuwaona wanyama kama vile nyati, tembo, swala, simba, fisi, twiga, pundamilia, nyumbu, na wanyama wengine wengi. Hatutakaa huko kwa muda mrefu ili kuwapatia wageni nafasi ya kula chakula cha jioni mapema na kupumzika kwa ajili ya shughuli nyingi za siku inayofuata.

Siku ya 2:

Siku nzima ya kuzuru Mbuga la Amboseli kwa gari

Kiamshakinywa kitakuwa tayari saa kumi na mbili unusu na baada ya kula tutaenda kwenye hifadhi ya Amboseli. Kwa hivyo kila mmoja wenu atahitaji kuamka mapema kwa ajili ya ziara hii. Tutatumia gari kwa ziara hii. Itakuwa fursa nzuri kwako kuwaona wanyama wengi kabla hawajatawanyika kwenye mbuga. Kisha utarudi kwenye chumba chako cha kulala na kupumzika hadi alasiri au kuchagua matembezi ya mchana katika mbuga.

Siku ya 3:

Safari ya kutoka Hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Amboseli hadi Hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Maasai Mara

Mtapata vitafunio kutoka vyumba vyenu mwendo wa saa kumi na moja asubuhi. Safari ya kwenda hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Maasai Mara itaanza saa kumi na moja na nusu asubuhi. Kutoka hifadhi ya Amboseli hadi hifadhi ya kitaifa ya Maasai Mara ni umbali wa kilomita mia tano, kumi na saba. Safari itachukua takriban saa tisa

hadi kumi kwa gari. Kwenye safari hii tutapumzika katika mji wa Narok na kwa wale wanaopenda nyama watapata nafasi ya kula nyama choma na kuzungumza na Wamaasai ili kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wao. Tutatarajiwa kufika katika hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Maasai Mara wakati wa alasiri. Kwa ajili safari hii itakuwa ndefu hatutafanya lolote baada ya kuwasili isipokuwa kuburudika, kupumzika, kula chakula cha jioni na kulala kwenye AA Mara Lodge au sehemu nyingine.

Siku ya 4:

Safari ya siku nzima katika hifadhi ya kitaifa ya Maasai Mara

Siku hii watu watahitaji kuamka mapema kwa ajili ya kiamshakinywa na kuelekea kwenye hifadhi ya kitaifa ya Maasai Mara. Tofauti na hifadhi ya Amboseli, katika hifadhi ya Maasai Mara mtaweza kuwaona wanyama wengi na pia kwa urahisi wakati wa ziara. Hifadhi hii ni kubwa zaidi na kuna wanyama wengi hatari kama vile simba, tembo na chui kwa hivyo kila mtu atabaki kwenye gari kwa ajili ya usalama. Baadaye, hoteli maarafu ya Mara Serena Safari Lodge itaandaa chakula cha jioni msituni ili watu wale chakula cha jioni wakiyafurahia mandhari. Hakuna kulipa ada zaidi kwa kuwa kila kitu kimegharamiwa. Hoteli hii ina walinzi wao wa kuhakikisha usalama bora na huduma za dharura kwa kila mgeni.

Siku ya 5:

Safari ya kurudi Nairobi

Baada ya kiamshakinywa tutatoka kwenye hifadhi kwa kutumia en-route game drive. Ni mwendo wa saa tano hadi sita kutoka hifadhi ya Maasai Mara kufika Nairobi. Tutapumzika kwa saa moja katika mji wa Narok kwa ajili ya chakula cha mchana. Tutatarajiwa kufika mji wa Nairobi jioni.

1. Kwa nini Kenya Safari ni kampuni maarufu?
2. Kwa nini watalii hawatakaa kwenye mbuga la Taifa la Amboseli kwa muda mrefu?
3. Safari ya asubuhi kwenye hifadhi ya Amboseli itawapatia watalii nafasi gani?
4. Wakati wa mapumziko mjini Narok, watalii wataweza kufanya nini?
5. Kuna tofauti gani kati ya hifadhi ya Maasai Mara na ya Amboseli?
6. Kwa nini watalii wanashauriwa kubaki ndani ya magari ya hifadhi wakati wa safari?
7. Watalii watapata huduma gani kutoka kwa kampuni ya Kenya Safari kila siku?
8. Je, unafikiri ni siku gani ambayo ina shughuli za kufana zaidi na kwa nini?
9. Iwapo ungekuwa na fursa ya kusafiri katika mbuga hizi ungependa kuona wanyama gani na kwa nini?
10. Je, kuna hifadhi gani kubwa za wanyama Marekani? Toa maelezo mafupi kuhusu mojawapo.



Zoezi U

There is a delegation from East Africa visiting your school that wants to go on a tour of your town and of important sites in the region. Prepare an itinerary that includes specific times and places that you will visit.



Zoezi V

Exchange your itinerary from the previous activity with a partner and come up with 5 questions that the delegation might ask about the timing and the places that they will visit. Once you have the questions prepared, act out the conversations. As time allows, discuss which of your itineraries is better or how you might combine your ideas to create a better itinerary.



Zoezi W

Joseph and Shamila arrive at Jomo Kenyatta Airport and are picked up by Isaiah from the tour company, who takes them to their hotel. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Isaiah: Karibuni Kenya Shamila na Joseph.

Shamila: Asante sana. Je, hujambo?

Isaiah: Sijambo. Mimi ni dereva wenu kutoka Kampuni ya Bonfire. Nitawapeleka kwenye hoteli ya Olesereni ambako mtakaa usiku wa leo kabla ya safari yenu kuanza.

Shamila: Asante kwa kuja kutupokea. Kila mmoja wetu ana mizigo mingi.

Isaiah: Ninaona. Tafadhali acheni mizigo yenu papa hapa. Nitawabebea hadi garini. Karibuni kwenye gari.

Shamila: Sawa. Mimi ninaitwa Shamila na huyu ni Joseph.

Isaiah: Mimi ni Isaiah. Nimefurahi sana kuwafahamu. Nitakuwa nanyi kwa muda wenu wote wa safari.

Shamila: Je, hoteli ya Olesereni iko mbali na uwanja wa ndege?

Isaiah: Hapana. Hoteli ya Olesereni haiko mbali. Kutoka kwa uwanja wa ndege ni kilomita kumi na moja na huchukua takribani dakika thelathini kama hakuna msongamano wa magari. Lakini sasa ni saa kumi na moja na robo jioni wakati ambapo watu wanatoka kazini kwa hivyo kuna msongamano mkubwa wa magari. Itatuchukua angalau dakika hamsini na tano kufika hotelini.

Shamila: Sawa hamna neno. La msingi ni tufike hotelini kwa usalama. Mandhari ya Nairobi yanapendeza sana. Kuna majengo mengi, watu wengi wanaotembea nje, na masoko ya wazi yenye bidhaa nyingi.

Isaiah: Bila shaka kuna sehemu nyingi sana za kuzuru jijini Nairobi na shughuli mbalimbali za kujistarehesha. Je, mtakuwa hapa kwa muda gani?

- Shamila:** Tutaenda safari kwa siku kumi na moja. Kisha baada ya kurudi tutakuwa na siku mbili za kupumzika na kuzuru jiji la Nairobi .
- Isaiah:** Siku mbili ni mwafaka kuzuru sehemu mbali mbali jijini. Ninapendekeza mtembelee makavazi ya Karen Blixen, Bead Factory, soko la wazi la Maasai na mikahawa mbalimbali.
- Shamila:** Asante kwa maelezo yako mazuri.
- Isaiah:** Je, hii ni mara yenu ya kwanza kuitembelea nchi ya Kenya?
- Shamila:** Ndiyo. Hii ni mara yetu ya kwanza kuitembelea nchi ya Kenya. Tunatokea nchi ya Tanzania kwa masomo ya nje ya nchi ya mwaka moja.
- Isaiah:** Karibuni sana Kenya. Mmekuja wakati mzuri wa safari. Ni kipindi cha uhamiaji wa nyumbu kwa hivyo mtaweza kushuhudia tukio hili. Pia mtaweza kuwaona wanyama wengi mbugani. Mko hapa kwa siku kumi na moja na mtakuwa na vitu vingi vya kufanya kila siku.
- Shamila:** Ni vyema kusikia kuwa huu ni wakati mzuri wa kwenda kwenye safari.
1. Shamila na Joseph, waliwasili katika Uwanja wa Ndege wa Kimataifa wa Jomo Kenyatta mwendo wa saa ngapi?
 2. Ni nani aliwalaki Shamila na Joseph katika Uwanja wa Ndege wa Kimataifa wa Jomo Kenyatta?
 3. Ingewachukua muda gani kutoka Uwanja wa Ndege wa Kimataifa wa Jomo Kenyatta hadi hoteli ya Ole Sereni na kwa nini?
 4. Baada ya siku kumi na moja za safari, Shamila na wenzake watasalia mjini Nairobi kwa siku ngapi?
 5. Dereva alipendekeza Shamila na wenzake watembelee sehemu gani baada ya safari yao?
 6. Kwa nini dereva alisema kuwa Shamila na wenzake walikuwa wamefika wakati mzuri wa kwenda kwa safari?



Zoezi X

The visiting delegation from the previous activities has arrived and you are now picking them up at the airport. Role-play meeting them in the terminal and discussing their upcoming stay as you guide them to the car.



Zoezi Y

Watch the video clip on *Zijue sababu zilizowasukuma Wakoloni kuifanya Serengeti kuwa hifadhi ya Taifa* on Morning Trumpet shown from Azam TV



1. Jina la Kamishna wa Shirika la Hifadhi za Taifa Tanzania (TANAPA) ni lipi?
2. Ni wanyama gani ambao wako ndani ya maji katika video?
3. Kwa nini hifadhi ya taifa ya Serengeti ni ya kipekee kitaifa na kimataifa?
4. Ni kivutio gani kilisababisha serikali ya wakoloni kuitenga Serengeti kuwa hifadhi ya taifa?
5. Nyumbu huhama kutoka hifadhi ya Serengeti na kwenda hifadhi gani nchini Kenya?
6. Ni wanyama gani wanaopatikana katika hifadhi ya taifa ya Serengeti?
7. Ni wageni wangapi ambao hutembelea hifadhi ya taifa ya Serengeti kila mwaka?
8. Wageni wanaotembelea hifadhi ya taifa ya Serengeti hutoka nchi gani?
9. Utalii unachangia asilimia gani la pato la taifa nchini Tanzania?
10. Hifadhi za taifa na utalii zina umuhimu gani kwa maendeleo ya nchi ya Tanzania?



Zoezi Z

Prepare a detailed presentation about a trip to East Africa including details such as; when you plan to go, who you will travel with, how you will get there, places you will visit, hotels you will stay in, restaurants you will visit, souvenirs you will buy, leisure activities you will engage in, cultural practices you will be interested in learning, and how you will get from one location to another. You might also provide some details about health concerns, financial issues (*mpesa*), and the things you might need to pack.

Key vocabulary

Adjectives

-anana	gentle/kind
angavu	bright
bora	better
chache	few
changa	young
dhalili	weak
dogo	small
dubwana	gigantic
-eupe	white
-eusi	black
fujo	chaotic
haba	scare
harakaharaka	fast
hatari	dangerous
-ingi; tele	a lot; many
-kahawia	brown
kali	ferocious; fierce
kasi	fast
katili	mean
kavu	dry
kijivu	grey
kimya	quite
kubwa	big
madoadoa	spots
maridadi	beautiful
mistari mistari	stripes
mwenye kelele	noisy
mwerevu	smart
nadhifu	clean
pendeza	attractive
polepole	slow
-rangi rangi	multicolored
-refu	tall
safi	clean
salama	safe
sumbufu	destructive; nuisance
tulivu	calm
-zee	old

Nouns

bahari	ocean(s)
bata mzinga	turkey
bonde	valley
bundi	owl
buti	boots
bwawa	swimming pool
changamoto	challenges

chemichemi fountain
choroa oryx
chui leopard
chui mwenye milia tiger
daraja bridge
dawa ya kufukuza wadudu insect repellent
dubu bear
duma cheetah
eneo region
fisi hyena
fuu shore
hali ya uchumi economy
hatari danger
hifadhi conservation
hoteli hotel
huduma za dharura emergency services
jangwa desert
kamera camera
kasuku parrot
kelele noise
kiboko hippo
kifaru rhinoceros
kilele peak
kima; tumbili monkey
kiongozi wa safari tour guide
kisiwa island
kobe turtle; tortoise
kofia hat
kongoni hartebeest
korongo flamingo; stork; crane
kulungu antelope
maandalizi preparation
mabonde valleys
madini minerals
mafuta ya kuzuia miale ya jua sunscreen
majengo/majumba ya zamani ya kihistoria old historical buildings
makavazi; makumbusho museum; archives
mamba; ngwena crocodile
mandhari environment
maporomoko waterfalls
mauzo sales
mazingira environment
maziwa lakes
mbu mosquito
mbuga za wanyama game reserves; game parks
mbwa dog
mbwa mwitu wild dog
mbweha fox
mchanga sand
mdudu insect
miambao ya pwani coastlines

miji ya pwani coastal cities
mlima mountain
mirima coastlands
msitu forest
mto river
miwani ya jua sunglasses
msafara entourage; convoy
msafiri traveler
msitu forest
mtandao internet
mwinuko altitude
ndege bird
ndovu; tembo elephant
ng'ombe cow
ngoma drum; dance
ngoma za kisasa contemporary dances
ngoma za kitamaduni traditional dances
ngoma za kizazi kipya new generational music
nguo za kuogelea swimsuit; swimming costume
njiwa dove; pigeon
nyangumi whale
nyani baboon(s)
nyati; mbogo buffalo
nyika wilderness
nyuki bee
nyumbu wildebeest
paa deer
paka cat
papa shark
pesa za kigeni foreign currency
pofu eland (antelope)
pomboo dolphins
punda milia zebra
pwani coast
pweza squid
ratiba program
safari journey or trip
safari kwenye hifadhi game drive
sanda sandals; slippers
sehemu region; area; place
simba lion
simbamarara lioness
sokwe gorilla
sokwe mtu chimpanzee
swala gazelle
swala pala impala
tai eagle
taulo towel
twiga giraffe
ufukwe beach
uhamiaji migration

usalama security
utalii tourism
utalii wa ndani domestic tourism
utalii wa nje international tourism
uwanja wa ndege airport
vilima hills
visiwa highlands
vivutio attractions
volkano volcano
wanyama wa kuvutia attractive animals
wanyama wa majini sea animals
watu na utamaduni people and cultures
Wizara ya Utalii na Wanyama Pori Ministry of Tourism and Wildlife
ziara tour

Verbs

-amka to wake up
-barizi; starehe to relax
-beba to carry
-chemsha to boil
-chukua to pick up
-endelea to continue
-endesha to drive
-fika to arrive
-kwea to climb
-laki to welcome; to receive
-nyanyua to lift up
-oga to shower
-ogelea to swim
-ogopa to fear
-ona to see
-ondoka to leave
-onyesha to show
-papasa to touch gently/stroke
-pata to get
-peleka to take
-pokea to receive
-pumzika to rest
-safiri to travel
-safirisha to transport
-safisha to clean
-shuka to go down
-stahimili to endure; persevere
-tembelea to visit
-tisha to scare
-tumia to use
-washa; wakisha to start a fire
-zima; zimisha to put off
-zuru to tour

Key Phrases

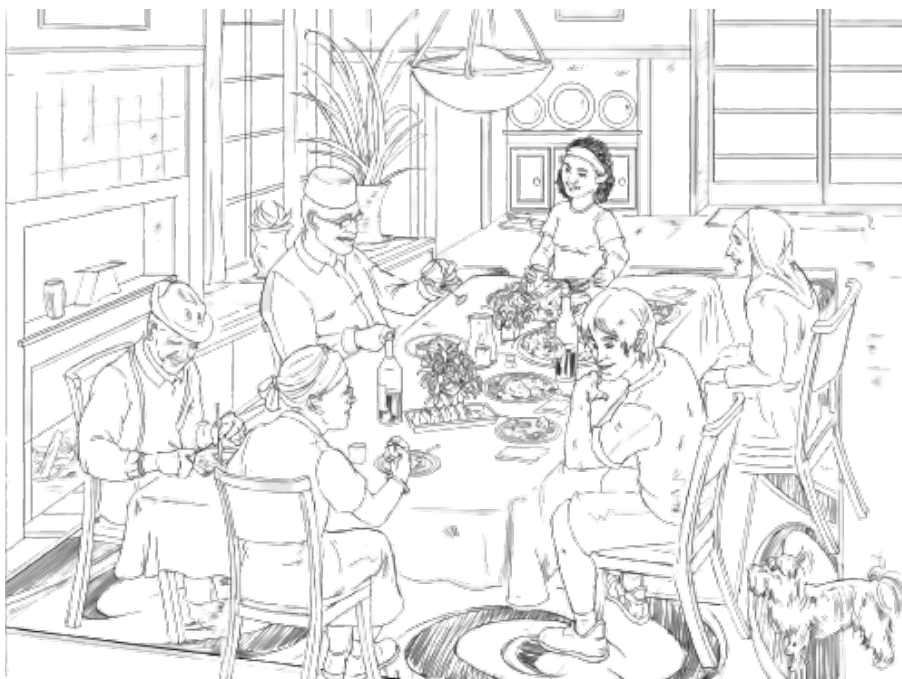
Eneo la hatari!	Danger zone!
gharama nafuu	affordable cost
gharama ya juu	high cost
Hewa safi	Clean air
Hifadhi ya mazingira	Environmental conservation
Je, unaweza kutupiga picha na wanyama hawa?	Can you take pictures of us with these animals?
Je, ungependa kuwaona wanyama gani mbugani?	Which animals would you like to see in the park?
Je, wanyama kwenye mbuga hili huwa tishio kwa jamii zilizo karibu?	Are the animals in this park a danger to the surrounding communities?
Jihadhari na wanyama hatari!	Be aware of dangerous animals!
Kuna vivutio gani muhimu vya watalii kwenye mbuga hili?	What are the important tourist attractions in this park?
Kuzuru Makavazi/Makumbusho ya Taifa.	To tour the National Museum/Archives.
maingiliano kati ya utalii na jamii	relationship between the community and the tourism sector
Mandhari haya ni ya kupendeza.	This environment is attractive.
mandhari ya kupendeza	attractive environment
Mbuga hili lina idadi gani ya wanyama?	How many animals are in this park?
Mnyama huyu hula chakula cha aina gani?	What kinds of foods does this animal eat?
Ni wakati gani bora wa kwenda kwenye safari?	What is the best time to go on a safari?
Ni wakati gani mzuri wa kuanza safari ya hifadhi?	What is the best time to start the game drive?
Ningependa kupiga picha wanyama hawa.	I would like to take pictures of these animals.
Ningependa kuwaeleza historia ya mbuga hili.	I would like to explain to you the history of this park.
Sketa ya utalii	Tourism sector
Uchafuzi wa mazingira	Air pollution
Unahitaji kuwa kimya!	You need to be quiet!
usalama wa kutosha.	adequate security
Usiguze sanaa!	Do not touch the artifacts!
Usiingilie hapa!	Do not enter through here!
Usilishe Wanyama!	Do not feed the animals!
Usipige kelele!	Do not make noise!
vivutio vya watalii vichache	few tourist attractions
vivutio vya watalii vingi	many tourist attractions
Wanyama hawa wanapendeza.	These animals are attractive.
wanyama wa kuogofya	scary animals
wanyama wa kupendeza	attractive animals

Epilogue



Zoezi A

Joseph and Shamila spend their final night in a joint dinner with their host families and discuss their recent trip to Kenya. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Shikamoo? Habari za jioni?

Juma na Farida: Marahaba na karibu sana!

Shamila: Asante. Mmekuwa wapokezi wazuri na wakarimu. Nimefurahi kukaa nanyi sana tangu tulipofika Tanzania takriban mwaka mmoja uliopita.

Joseph: Sikujisikia kuwa mgeni kwa ajili ya ukarimu wa Bwana Musa na Bibi Fatuma. Siamini kuwa mwaka mmoja umeisha na nitawakosa sana kwa kuwa nyinyi ni familia yangu. Ninatumani nitarudi tena. Mnakaribishwa Marekani sana.

Bwana Musa: Karibu kwetu tena. Tutafurahi kukupokea utakapotembelea Tanzania tena. Unazo nambari zetu za simu kwa hivyo tujulishe wakati utakapotaka kututembelea. Bila shaka tutafanya maandalizi yote pamoja na kuja kukuchukua kwenye uwanja wa ndege wa Kimataifa wa Julius Nyerere. Bibi Fatuma, una jambo lolote la kuongeza?

- Bibi Fatuma:** Langu ni kusema tutakukosa sana. Ume kuwa kijana mwenye nidhamu na tumefurahia kukaa na wewe. Tungependa kujua safari yenu imekuwaje ya kwenda Zanzibar na nchini Kenya. Joseph alituelezea kidogo lakini itakuwa vizuri kusikia ripoti ya Shamila.
- Bwana Musa:** Kabla ya Shamila kutueleza kuhusu safari yao ya Zanzibar, nina maswali machache kwa Joseph.
- Joseph:** Sawa, uliza Baba!
- Bwana Musa:** Je, una maoni gani kuhusu utamaduni wa Kenya? Mliteembelea makavazi yoyote nchini Kenya?
- Joseph:** Sikujifunza sana kuhusu utamaduni wa nchi ya Kenya kwa sababu katika safari yetu tulitembelea Makavazi madogo ya Karen Blixen tu. Hatukwenda kwa Makavazi ya Kitaifa ya Nairobi. Lakini, ninadhani tukipata nafasi ya kuhudhuria siku ya utamaduni katika ukumbi wa Bomas jijini Nairobi wakati mwingine tutaweza kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa makabila tofauti ya Kenya.
- Bwana Musa:** Shamila, sasa unaweza kutueleza kuhusu safari yenu.
- Shamila:** Safari ilikuwa nzuri sana. Tuliweza kuhudhuria tamasha ya Sauti za Busara. Huko tulitazama maonyesho ya kuburudisha na kutembelea mbuga za wanyama na sehemu zingine tofauti nchini Kenya.
- Bwana Juma:** Nilisikia kuwa mliweza kwenda kwenye Mbuga la Wanyama la Amboseli na la Maasai Mara. Ni mbuga gani ungependekeza tulitembelee iwapo tutapata pesa na nafasi.
- Shamila:** Mbuga la wanyama la Maasai Mara ni bora zaidi kwa kuwa kuna wanyama wengi na ni rahisi kuwaona kuliko mbuga mengine.
- Bwana Juma:** Je, mlikuwa na shughuli za kutosha za kufanya kwenye safari yenu?
- Shamila:** Tulikuwa na shughuli nyingi na siku zilikwenda upesi sana. Tulitamani tukae siku mbili zaidi lakini hatukuwa na pesa za kutosha kulipia hoteli na vyakula.
- Bibi Fatuma:** Ninafikiri hii ilikuwa safari ndefu. Mbona hamkubaki huko Amboseli?
- Shamila:** Kwa kweli, hii ilikuwa safari ndefu ya kilomita zaidi ya mia tano barabarani. Tulitaka kwenda Maasai Mara kwa kuwa ni maarufu sana barani Afrika na duniani kote na ulikuwa msimu wa kuhama kwa nyumbu kutoka Maasai Mara hadi Serengeti.
- Bibi Fatuma:** Mlifanya uamuzi mzuri.
- Bwana Juma:** Kama mngepata nafasi nyingine ya kupanga safari hii, ni mambo yapi ambayo mngeyafanya tofauti?
- Shamila:** Tungetembelea makavazi ya Taifa ya Bomas, Nyaraka za Kitaifa za Kenya na Tanzania ili kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa nchi hizi na historia za utawala wao wakati wa koloni za Wajerumani na Waingereza.
- Joseph:** Pia, tungetembelea sehemu nyingi sana na kuhudhuria sherehe zaidi hasa za dini tofauti ili tujue kuhusu dini ya Kihindi na dini asili za Kiafrika kabla ya kufika kwa Wamishonari Afrika Mashariki.

Shamila: Kwa niaba yangu na Joseph ningependa kuwashukuru sana kwa ukarimu wenu mwingi jioni ya leo.

Bwana Juma: Asante sana Bwana Musa na familia yako kwa kutualika. Tunaomba tuondoke sasa. Tunatumaini tutaonana nanyi kwenye uwanja wa ndege siku ya kusafiri kwenu.

1. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila watazikosa familia za Bwana Musa na Juma?
2. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila hawakujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa nchi ya Kenya?
3. Bwana Musa aliwashauri Joseph na Shamila kufanya nini ili kuelewa zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa Afrika Mashariki?
4. Mbona Shamila na Joseph walisafiri kwa muda mrefu kwenda hifadhi ya Maasai Mara kutoka Mbuga la Wanyama la Amboseli?
5. Iwapo watapata nafasi ya kupanga safari nyingine, Joseph na Shamila watafanya nini tofauti ili kuboresha safari yao?
6. Iwapo wewe ungekaa na mojawapo ya familia hizi ungeziaga vipi kulingana na utamaduni wako?



Zoezi B

Joseph and Amina arrive to take Shamila to the airport. Read the dialogue of Shamila saying goodbye to her host family and answer the questions that follow.



Amina: Hodi huku, wenyeji wapo?

Bibi Farida: Karibu ndani, tupo!

Amina: Shikamoo mama?

Bibi Farida: Marahaba! Habari za leo?

- Amina:** Salama. Tumekuja kumchukua Shamila.
- Bibi Farida:** Shamila! Njoo akina Joseph wameshafika.
- Shamila:** Hamjambo Amina na Joseph?
- Joseph:** Hatujambo! Habari za leo?
- Shamila:** Mimi niko salama.
- Joseph:** Je, uko tayari?
- Shamila:** Nilikuwa ninamalizia kuzipanga nguo zangu kwenye begi ili tuondoke. Tafadhali nipe dakika kumi.
- Joseph:** Sawa. Tafadhali, harakisha kwa kuwa hatuna muda mwingi na Amina ameniambia kuwa wakati wa jioni huwa kuna msongamano wa magari kwenye barabara ya kuingia kwenye Uwanja wa Ndege wa Kimataifa wa Julius Nyerere.
- Bibi Farida:** Joseph, umefurahia kukaa hapa Dar es Salaam na maisha ya nchi ya Tanzania na Afrika Mashariki kwa jumla?
- Joseph:** Ndiyo, nimefurahia vyakula vizuri vya kitamaduni hasa wali wa nazi, samaki wa kupaka, biriani, sambusa, pamoja na kinywaji cha ukwaju. Pia watanzania ni watu wenye ukarimu mwingi, utu na roho nzuri. Mimi na Shamila tulifurahia nafasi ya kuhudhuria sherehe mbalimbali na kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni na sanaa za nchi hii. Mandhari pia yanapendeza hasa saa za jioni kwa ajili ya upepo wa bahari Hindi. Wiki mbili za mwisho ingawa tulitumia pesa nyingi zilikuwa muhimu sana kwetu kwa kuwa tuliona vivutio vingi na tuliweza kwenda kwenye burudani jijini.
- Bibi Farida:** Nimefurahi kufahamu kuwa mmependezwa na nchi yetu. Ninaona Shamila ako tayari na begi zake.
- Shamila:** Ndiyo mama! Sasa ninaona wakati wa kuanza safari yetu kuelekea uwanja wa ndege na kurudi Marekani umefika. Lakini, kabla tuondoke tungependa kuwashukuru sana, wewe na Bwana Juma, pamoja na familia ya Bwana Musa na Bibi Fatuma. Mmetupokea vizuri sana na kutusaidia kwa mambo mengi kwa mwaka mmoja tuliokaa na nyinyi.
- Juma:** Karibuni sana. Mmekaribishwa nyumbani kwetu wakati wowote. Tutafurahi kuwapokea tena pamoja na familia zenu.
- Shamila:** Ningependa kuwapatia zawadi ndogo kama ishara ya shukrani zangu. Hii ni zawadi yako Bibi Farida na familia yako. Joseph alishawapatia Bibi Fatuma na Bwana Musa zawadi yao. Tuliona ni vyema tuwapatie zawadi kuonyesha shukrani zetu za dhati.
- Joseph:** Ninajua tunaweza kukosa nafasi nyingine kuzungumza tunapoenda kwenye uwanja wa ndege kwa ajili ya muda. Kwa hivyo kwa niaba ya wanafunzi wote wa Kiswahili, tunatoa shukrani zetu za dhati kwa ukarimu, upendo, na msaada wenu tangu tulipofika kwenye boma lenu. Kusema kweli, tumekuwa tukijihisi nyumbani.
- Amina:** Karibuni hapa Tanzania na nyumbani kwetu wakati wowote. Tunawashukuru pia kwa kuwa wanafunzi wazuri na kwa kutupa zawadi.
- Shamila:** Sasa tunaweza kuondoka, Amina.

Joseph: Hebu nikusaidie kuweka begi zako kwenye gari.

Shamila: Kwaheri Bibi Farida na Bwana Juma. Nitawasiliana na nyinyi nitakapofika mji wa Lawrence.

Bibi Farida: Wape familia zenu salamu zetu. Ninatumaini kuwa watatutembelea likizo moja hivi karibuni.

Joseph: Tutuwasalimia. Kwaheri!

Bibi Farida: Kwaheri ya kuonana! Safari njema.

1. Kwa nini Shamila anahitaji kuharakisha kupanga nguo zake?
2. Amina na Joseph walifanya nini wakimsuburi Shamila kujitayarisha?
3. Ni mambo gani aliyoyafurahia Joseph kwa mwaka mmoja alipoishi Afrika Mashariki?
4. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila walizipatia familia walizokaa nazo zawadi?
5. Kwa nini Joseph alisema alikuwa anajihisi kuwa nyumbani tangu afike kwenye boma la Bwana Musa na Bibi Fatuma?

Sources

7.1 Usafiri

- “Masai men walking” by Toppazz is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Twee_Masai_mannen_bewapend_met_pijlen_en_bogen,_-14_december_2010_a.jpg
- “Skater Nairobi Park” by Alejandro Caceres is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 8/14/23/ <https://flickr.com/photos/ac2099/15410227273>
- “Bicycle delivery guy in Diani Kenya” by Emmaculate Jacobine is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_bicycle_delivery_guy_in_diani_kenya.jpg
- “Kilifi county” by Kabukasteven is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kilifi_county.jpg
- “Tuk-tuk in Nairobi” by Daryona is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tuk-tuk_in_Nairobi.JPG
- “BHP Subaru Nairobi » by joeyprek is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/26/2023. <https://flickr.com/photos/joeyprek/8298466347>
- “Taxi” by Brenda Wawire is licensed under CC BY NC.
- “Mercedes Benz Irizar coach” by Bob Adams is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mercedes_Benz_Irizar_coach_\(15359623380\).jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mercedes_Benz_Irizar_coach_(15359623380).jpg)
- “Matatu matwana culture Kenya” by Mikenautomobile is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/0/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MATATU_MATWANA_CULTURE_KENYA_06.jpg
- “Buses in Kenya 15” by Smart villager and Matwana culture Kenya is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Buses_in_kenya_15.jpg
- “Kenya Airways” by Nevit Dilmen is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kenya_Airways_9984_Nevit.jpg
- “RVR 9408 Nairobi [train] » by Fredrick Onyango is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:RVR_9409_Nairobi.jpg
- “Traffic jam in Nairobi” by Musya Jackson is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Traffic_Jam_in_Nairobi.jpg
- “Mombasa ferry” by Daryona is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mombasa_ferry.JPG
- “Passengers alighting from the Madaraka Express...” by Kemuntobear is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Passengers_Alighting_from_the_Madaraka_Express_Train,_Standard_Gauge_Railway_SGR_KENYA_when_it_was_first_Launch.jpg#/media/File:Passengers_Alighting_from_the_Madaraka_Express_Train,_Standard_Gauge_Railway_SGR_KENYA_when_it_was_first_Launch.jpg
- “President Trump and the First Lady Welcome the President of the Republic of Kenya and Mrs. Kenyatta to the White House” is in the public domain. Last accessed 9/6/23. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/whitehouse45/30455961938>
- Content of Zoezi I adapted from BBC articles “Kwa Picha: Mkutano wa Uhuru Kenyatta na Donald Trump White House Marekani” (<https://www.bbc.com/swahili/habari-45327398>) and “Rais Trump na Kenyatta wajaadili ugaidi na biashara mkutano wao White House, Marekani” (<https://www.bbc.com/swahili/habari-45326727>).
- Screen capture from *Inside the World of Matwana Matatu Culture* from CNN. All rights reserved to CNN. Last accessed 10/9/2023. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c8sStE9p4QM>.
- Screen capture from Faces of Africa – Matatu: My Life, My Art” from CGTN Africa. All rights reserved to CGTN Africa. Last accessed 10/9/2023. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8bOK3dS56Ik>.

- “Bus Ticket” by Easy Coach adapted from <https://youthvillage.co.ke/wp-content/uploads/PRINT.jpg>. All rights reserved to Easy Coach.
- Zoezi R content adapted from “Je wajua athari za kuchelewa kukamilika kwa reli ya SGR Tanzania kiuchumi?” (<https://www.bbc.com/swahili/habari-60052864>) and “Kuhusu SGR” (<https://www.trc.co.tz/pages/about-sgr>)
- Screen capture from “Zanzibar Celebrates 20 Years of Sauti za Busara”. All rights reserved to Sauti za Busara Official. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=s2OkhNMzBRs>

7.2 Starehe na Burudani

- “Left turn ahead only” by the government of Mauritius is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mauritius_Road_Signs_-_Mandatory_Sign_-_Left_turn_ahead_only.svg
- “Ahead only” by the government of Mauritius is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mauritius_Road_Signs_-_Mandatory_Sign_-_Ahead_Only.svg
- “Right turn ahead only” by the government of Mauritius is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mauritius_Road_Signs_-_Mandatory_Sign_-_Right_turn_ahead_only.svg
- “Map-Africa-Regions” by Nick Roux and Peter Fitzgerald is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Map-Africa-Regions.png>
- “Simple compass rose” by Brosen is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Simple_compass_rose.svg
- Zoezi U text adapted from “Hawa sio wa kuwakosa katika Tamasha la Sauti za Busara 2022” by Paul Owere. Published January 28, 2022 in *Mwananchi*. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://www.mwananchi.co.tz/mw/michezo/burudani/hawa-sio-wa-kuwakosa-katika-tamasha-la-sauti-za-busara-2022-3697544>
- Screen capture from “Tazama: Msanii wa Tanzania Dipper Rato anavyopania kukuza mziki wa Rege” from BBC News Swahili. All rights reserved to BBC News. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://www.bbc.com/swahili/articles/cgxg8y4055go>

7.3 Safari katika vivutio vya Utalii

- “Mount Kenya” by Radu Vatu is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mount_Kenya_2010.jpg.
- “Takaungu beach, Kenya” by Spurk1 is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Takaungu_beach,_Kenya.jpg.
- “Nairobi skyline” by Jorge Láscar is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/jlascar/4540193281/>.
- “Sansibar Holzboot” by Ikiwaner is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sansibar_Holzboot.jpg.
- “Chalbi Desert” by Filberto Strazzari is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/filiberto74/6318810646/>.
- “Palace Museum” by Harvey Barrison is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Zanzibar_2012_06_06_4225_\(7592222730\).jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Zanzibar_2012_06_06_4225_(7592222730).jpg).
- “Tsavo Gate” by Mariusz is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:TsavoGate67.jpg>.
- “MamaLai” by ZeeKay is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. <https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MamaLai.jpg>.
- Zoezi G itinerary is based upon information provided in tour descriptions from Kilimanjaro on Foot (kilimanjaroonthefoot.com) with some modifications and translated from the original English.

- “Kilimanjaro” by Stig Nygaard is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
- “Climbing toward the Lava Tower site, Kilimanjaro” by Masa Sakano is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Climbing_toward_the_Lava_Tower_site,_Kilimanjaro,-25_Aug._2009_a.jpg
- “Kilimanjaro” by Mário Simoes is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/56785346@N00/27307131894>
- “African leopard” by Derek Keats is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
[https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:African_leopard,_Panthera_pardus_pardus,_near_Lake_Panic,_Kruger_National_Park,_South_Africa_\(19448654130\).jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:African_leopard,_Panthera_pardus_pardus,_near_Lake_Panic,_Kruger_National_Park,_South_Africa_(19448654130).jpg)
- “African elephant” by Charles J. Sharp is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
- [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:African_elephant_\(Loxodonta_africana\)_2.jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:African_elephant_(Loxodonta_africana)_2.jpg)
- “Giraffe at Nairobi National Park, Kenya” by Trump White House Archived is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
[https://www.flickr.com/photos/148748355@N05/43309132930/.](https://www.flickr.com/photos/148748355@N05/43309132930/)
- “Portrait Hippopotamus in the water” by Muhammad Mahdi Karim is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Portrait_Hippopotamus_in_the_water.jpg.
- “Masai Mara National Reserve” [Hyena] by Ninara is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/23. <https://www.flickr.com/photos/ninara/52493449934/>
- “Lion at rest” by Richard Probst is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/23.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/shotinaframe/52941076093>.
- “Blue Wildebeest, Ngorongoro” by Muhammad Mahdi Karim is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blue_Wildebeest,_Ngorongoro.jpg.
- “Grevy's zebra” by Snake3yes is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
<https://www.flickr.com/photos/snake3yes/229889098>.
- “Crocodile” by eks-i zîbâ is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
<https://flickr.com/photos/eksiziba/9281191896>.
- “Impalas at Nairobi National Park, Kenya” by Trump White House Archived is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
[https://www.flickr.com/photos/148748355@N05/45073825842/.](https://www.flickr.com/photos/148748355@N05/45073825842/)
- “White rhino and young” by Hein Waschefort is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:White_rhino_and_young.jpg.
- “Sitting Cheetah” by Benh Lieu Song is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
[https://www.flickr.com/photos/blieusong/7233912052/.](https://www.flickr.com/photos/blieusong/7233912052/)
- Screen capture from “U Talii wa Ndani - Hifadhi ya Serengeti 22.04.2016” by Channel ten. All rights reserved to Channel ten. Last accessed 10/19/2023.
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TLwMjFO0Omg>



Hujambo!

A Standards-Based Approach to Introductory Kiswahili

Hujambo! provides a complete curriculum for introductory Kiswahili that chronicles the adventures of two American students studying abroad in Tanzania for an academic year. It provides a foundational understanding of Kiswahili and the cultures of those who share it as a common language. Students will acquire the basics of Kiswahili grammar and build a core vocabulary of approximately 1,000 words, including the most common words for everyday interactions and individual vocabulary they need to speak about their own academic and personal lives. Students follow the two American students from their arrival at the airport until they depart home, providing an opportunity to learn about their host families, academic pursuits, and free time with friends. Conversations with members of the local community, as well as emails and texts they send to one another, provide meaningful insight about their encounters with a new culture and how it (re)shapes their view of the larger world.